# Mathematical Logic: A Computational Approach

*Release 0.1*

**Kevin Sullivan**

**May 18, 2018**

# CONTENTS:

# PREFACE

This is a course, and a new kind of course, in discrete mathematics (DM) for early undergaduate students in computer science and related disciplines. The usual DM course at this level is a paper-and-pencil affair about proof techniques many CS students find hard to relate to their interests in computing. This course charts a better way.

## 1.1 Design Rationale

Several premises underlie the design of this course. First, students want to know up front why logical proposition and proofs are relevant, and how they are demonstrably and powerfully useful, for the practice of computer science. This course thus grounds a study of mathematical logic in the needs of software specification and verification. The central idea is that while *code* is the language of implementation, mathematical logic is the language of specification, and proofs, in particular, are the language of verification.

Second, students of computer science are awed and inspired by *what machines can do* when properly instructed. Moreover, recent, rapid, and ongoing advances in the integration of logic and computing have put us at the threshold of a new era in which every undergraduate student of programming can and should be required to have a firm and principled grounding in modern, *tool-supported* formal specification and verification techniques.

A central premise of this course is this that students can now, should now, and will be inspired to, see how mathematical logic and proof can be applied, automated, and used for mechanical checking of code using modern program verification tools.

The limited aim of the first segment of this course is to familiarize students with the language and uses of first-order predicate logic by teaching them how to write pre-/post-condition specifications, logical assertions, and loop invariants for code that can then be verified by a tool. The first part of the course thus relieves them of the need to understand proofs. This course thus teaches imperative and functional programming and specification using Dafny, and uses Dafny's SMT-based program verification engine to provide students immediate feedback on their specifications and programs.

Third, the effective study of set theory, relational logic, order theory, and related concepts relies on a reasonable degree of fluency in first-order predicate logic. The study of these topics should thus occur only after students have hadsome significant practice with the language of predicate logic. That said, studying set theory and its related concepts will provide significant additional practice with and will deepen students' understanding of this language and its uses.

Furthermore, while the set and relational abstraction provided by most industrial programming languages are conceptually compromised (what on earth is a *hashmap*, for example), the libraries of carefully defined modern verifications systems are almost idea for teaching *automated* set theory. Dafny's finite *set* and infinite *iset* types provide operations and notations that directly reflect the corresponding set theory, for example. One write cardinalities, unions, comprehensions, etc. with very natural syntax and semantics. Rather than

learning set theory as an arcane paper-and-pencil exercise, students can now learn it by writing beautiful code that they can play with and run.

Third, the on-ramp to learning proof techniques is complex and should be taught through a step-by-step development of underlying principles. This course therefore takes students on an incremental journey through an evolving landscape of deepening concepts. Having developed students' fluency in reading, writing, and *benefitting from* predicate logic, the course then asks and starts to answer the question, *what is a logic*?

## 1.2 Progression

This question leads directly to the notion of a formal language, which the course then addresses in the style of modern type theory. As an easy warm-up, students learn how to specify the *syntax* of a simple variant of the language of Boolean expressions (with both literals and connectives but no variables) using *inductive type definitions*; and they learn how to specify and implement the *semantics* of a language using *pattern matching* and *structural recursion* over terms of the language.

In the next chapter, students first extend this language to support Boolean variables, leading to the core concept of an environment or interpretation: or to a *state* in which an expression that includes variables is evaluated. From there it's a simple observation that the students have constructed a language fully isomorphic to propositional logic!

The concepts of models and of satisfiability (there exists a model), of validity (for all models), and of unsatisfiability (there does not exist a model) all follow directly. The class works through a basic implementation of a SAT solver and validity/unsatisfiability checker using truth tables.

Next, leveraging the same code base, students work through the concept and implementation of *named inference rules* for *natural deduction* for propositional logic, using our validity checker to test whether proposed *reasoning principles* (inference rules) are valid or not. They are thus led to the concept of *semantic entailment*. The also see that it cannot scale because truth tables are exponential in the number of variables in a given proposition. Incidentally, the coding of these capabilities provides students with more and deeper examples of the uses of specifications to write and check clean, correct code.

Finally, students are led to the notions of *syntactic entailment*, and thus of *derivations* and *proofs*. At this point, the course finally "surfaces" proof objects, and does so by changing tools from Dafny to Lean, a new constructive logic proof assistant that, like Dafny, was (and continues to be) developed at Microsoft Research (by Leo de Moura). The introduction and elimination rules of natural deduction are now recapitulated, but now in the context and language of higher-order constructive logic.

From there, proof strategies are taught as following in many cases from the form of the proposition to be proved. Rather than initially learning proofs as informal paper-and-pencil constructions, they see them as precisely and inductively formed objects. The powerful type system of Lean, which includes typed *holes* provides very beautiful support for top-down structured development of proof objects, and, indeed of programs, since programs are, of course, ultimately, also proofs: of their types.

Chapters follow on proof techniques deriving from the various forms of propositions, ultimately reaching proofs by induction for universally quantified propositions. (Notes not yet in place: TBD).

## 1.3 Tools

The course used the Dafny and Lean languages, and used VS Code and the Dafny and Lean extensions for VS Code for all student work. Students worked on code in almost every class, generally pulling updates to be discussed and worked on each day from the author's evolving GitHub repository. Startin in Fall 2018 the plan is to organize the repo as a set of branches, each introducing the additional material for each day of the course.

The Dafny and Lean languages, per se, caused few complications. Dafny has incomplete heuristics that lead to mystifying results in a few cases. Notably, while it has heuristics that infer that intersections of finite sets are finite, the same is not true for unions, so Dafny rejects the obvious definition of set union as not well formed; and this is but one example of family of related inferencing deficiencies. In practice, students accepted that these are problems that could in principle be resolved but that haven't yet been addressed in this cutting-edge software.

The VS Code extensions, on the other hand, worked, but had greater deficiencies. They still need some work. The Dafny extension sometimes produces voluminous error logging messages visible to the user. They confuse and annoy users, who just learn to ignore them. Both the Dafny and Lean extensions sometimes fail to update error indications (red squiggly underlines indicating errors in code), even when the code is corrected. This issue causes consternation, frustration, anger, even sadness among students, until they learn the work-arounds. Instructors considering using this curriculum should be aware of these issues with the VS Code extensions. The author is happy to discuss them with other instructors and investigators who might be interested.

## 1.4 Exercises

Exercises are currently provided in some but not all chapters. This is work that planned for completion by the start of Fall semester, 2018.

## 1.5 Acknowledgements

The design of this course owes a lot to many other researchers. It was inspired by pedagogical works organized around Coq, notably Benjamin Pierce's Software Foundations and Chlipala's Certified Programming with Dependent Types. Unlike those works, this course is geared to the beginning undergraduate students in computer science, and so it aims to make no assumptions about prior knowledge except of the most fundamental constructs of imperative programming.

This course was also inspired and influenced by the *How to Design Programs* curricula by Felleisen, Krishnamurthi, et al., and realized perhaps most fully in the *MOOC* courses by Kiczales at UBC. Unlike those courses, however, this one take a strong stand on the absolute necessity of using strongly typed languages. The HTDP's basis in the untyped language of Scheme (Racket) leaves the type-driven ideas that underpin the curriculum unsupported by the language and tools that the students actually use to learn programming. This course necessarily makes an absolyte commitment to the *pedagogical* value of strong typing, as enforced by Dafny, and as realized in the Lean language's full embrace of higher-order constructive logic and the Curry-Howard correspondence.

The author gratefully acknowledges the support of Rustan Leino, the developer of Dafny, and several others who provided insight and help in the author's use of Dafny; of Leo de Moura, Tom Ball, and Jeremy Avigad, for their help with Lean, and Jeremy for open source code that taught the author how to format this book using Sphinx; Mattias Felleisen, Shriram Krishnamurthi, Gregor Kiczales, and others for discussions about HTDP and related pedagogical strategies; and Ken Birman, who suggested that the author look at Dafny as a strong candidate for a first or early course for computer scientists. The author also thanks the students in his CS2102 Spring 2018 class for their patience and enthusiasm for learning discrete math following this somewhat novel approach to teaching that class. Thanks y'all.

## 1.6 Feedback and Corrections

The author advises that this book in its current form is still a very rough draft. Corrections and other forms of feedback are welcomed. The author requests that corrections in particular be posted as *issues* on the author's GitHub repo, at http://github.com/kevinsullivan/cs-dm. Feel free to follow up with email to sullivan.kevinj at gmail. At some point soon the author will develop a protocol allowing members of the broader community to contribute to this effort, perhaps in the style of Pierce around Software Foundations.

# TWO

# REQUIREMENT, SPECIFICATIONS, AND IMPLEMENTATIONS

Software is an increasingly critical component of major societal systems, from rockets to power grids to healthcare, etc. Failures are not always bugs in implementation code. The most critical problems today are not in implementations but in requirements and specifications.

- **Requirements:** Statements of the effects that a system is meant to have in a given domain

- **Specification:** Statements of the behavior required of a machine to produce such effects

- **Implementation:** The definition (usually in code) of how a machine produces the specified behavior

Avoiding software-caused system failures requires not only a solid understanding of requirements, specifications, and implementations, but also great care in both the *validation* of requirements and of specifications, and *verification* of code against specifications.

- **Validation:** *Are we building the right system?* is the specification right; are the requirements right?

- **Verification:** *Are we building the system right?* Does the implementation behave as its specification requires?

You know that the language of implementation is code. What is the language of specification and of requirements?

One possible answer is *natural language.* Requirements and specifications can be written in natural languages such as English or Mandarin. The problem is that natural language is subject to ambiguity, incompleteness, and inconsistency. This makes it a risky medium for communicating the precise behaviors required of complex software artifacts.

The alternative to natural language that we will explore in this class is the use of mathematical logic, in particular what we call propositional logic, predicate logic, set theory, and the related field of type theory.

Propositional logic is a language of simple propositions. Propositions are assertions that might or might not be judged to be true. For example, *Tennys (the person) plays tennis* is actually a true proposition (if we interpret *Tennys* to be the person who just played in the French Open). So is *Tennys is from Tennessee.* And because these two propositions are true, so is the *compound* proposition (a proposition built up from smaller propositions) that Tennys is from Tennessee **and** Tennys plans tennis.

Sometimes we want to talk about whether different entities satisfy give propositions. For this, we introduce propositions with parameters, which we will call *properties.* If we take *Tennys* out of *Tennys plays tennis* and replace his name by a variable, *P*, that can take on the identify of any person, then we end up with a parameterized proposition, *P plays tennis.* Substituting the name of any particular person for *P* then gives us a proposition *about that person* that we can judge to be true or false. A parameterized proposition thus gives rise to a whole family of propositions, one for each possible value of *P*.

Sometimes we write parameterized propositions so that they look like functions, like this: *PlaysTennis(P).* *PlaysTennis(Tennys)* is thus the proposition, *Tennys plays Tennis* while *PlaysTennis(Kevin)* is the proposition *Kevin plays Tennis.* For each possible person name, *P*, there is a corresponding proposition, *PlaysTennis(P).*

Some such propositions might be true. For instance, *PlaysTennis(Tennys)* is true in our example. Others might be false. A parameterized proposition thus encodes a *property* that some things (here people) have and that others don't have (here, the property of *being a tennis player*).

A property, also sometimes called a *predicate*, thus also serves to identify a *subset* of elements in a given *domain of discourse*. Here the domain of discourse is the of all people. The subset of people who actually do *play tennis* is exactly the set of people, P, for whom *PlaysTennis(P)* is true.

We note briefly, here, that, like functions, propositions can have multiple parameters. For example, we can generalize from *Tennys plays Tennis \*\*and\** Tennys is from Tennessee\* to *P plays tennis and P is from L,* where P ranges over people and L ranges over locations. We call a proposition with two or more parameters a *relation.* A relation picks out *combinations* of elements for which corresponding properties are true. So, for example, the *pair* (Tennys, Tennessee) is in the relation (set of *P-L* pairs) picked out by this parameterized proposition. On the other hand, the pair, (Kevin, Tennessee), is not, because Kevin is actually from New Hampshire, so the proposition *Kevin plays tennis \*\*and\** Kevin is from Tennessee\* is not true. More on relations later!

# THREE

# LOGICAL SPECIFICATIONS, IMPERATIVE IMPLEMENTATIONS

We've discussed requirements, specifications, and implementations as distinct artifacts that serve distinct purposes. For good reasons, these artifacts are usually written in different languages. Software implementations are usually written in programming languages, and, in particular, are usually written in *imperative* programming languages. Requirements and specifications, on the other hand, are written either in natural language, e.g., English, or in the language of mathematical logic.

This unit discusses these different kinds of languages, why they are used for different purposes, the advantages and disadvantages of each, and why modern software development requires fluency in and tools for handling artifacts written in multiple such languages. In particular, the educated computer scientist and the capable software developer must be fluent in the language of mathematical logic.

## 3.1 Imperative Languages for Implementations

The language of implementations is code, usually written in what we call an *imperative* programming language. Examples of such languages include Python, Java, C++, and Javascript.

The essential property of an imperative language is that it is *procedural*. Programs in these languages describe step-by-step *procedures*, in the form of sequences of *commands*, for solving given problem instances. Commands in turn operate (1) by reading, computing with, and updating values stored in a *memory*, and (2) by interacting with the world outside of the computer by executing input and output (I/O) commands.

Input (or *read*) commands obtain data from *sensors*. Sensors include mundane devices such as computer mice, trackpads, and keyboards. They also include sensors for temperature, magnetism, vibration, chemicals, biological agents, radiation, and face and license plate recognition, and much more. Sensors convert physical phenomena in the world into digital data that programs can manipulate. Computer programs can thus be made to *compute about reality beyond the computing machine.*

Output (or *write*) commands turn data back into physical phenomena in the world. The cruise control computer in a car is a good example. It periodically senses both the actual speed of the car and the desired speed set by the driver. It then computes the difference and finally finally it outputs data representing that difference to an *actuator* that changes the physical accelerator and transmission settings of the car to speed it up or slow it down. Computer programs can thus also be made to *manipulate reality beyond the computing machine.*

A special part of the world beyond of the (core of a) computer is its *memory*. A memory is to a computer like a diary or a notebook is to a person: a place to *write* information at one point in time that can then be *read* back later on. Computers use special actuators to write data to memory, and special sensors to read it back from memory when it is needed later on. Memory devices include *random access memory* (RAM), *flash memory*, *hard drives*, *magnetic tapes*, *compact* and *bluray* disks, cloud-based data storage systems such as Amazon's *S3* and *Glacier* services, and so forth.

Sequential progams describe sequences of actions involving reading of data from sensors (including from memory devices), computing with this data, and writing resulting data out to actuators (to memory devices, display screens, and physical systems controllers). Consider the simple assignment command, *x := x + 1*. It tells the computer to first *read* in the value stored in the part of memory designated by the variable, *x, to add one to that value, and finally to \*write* the result back out to the same location in memory. It's as if the person read a number from a notebook, computed a new number, and then erased the original number and replaced it with the new number. The concept of an updateable memory is at the very heart of the imperative model of computation.

## 3.2 Declarative Languages for Specifications

The language of formal requirements and specifications, on the other hand, is not imperative code but *declarative* logic. Expressions in such logic will state *what* properties or relationships must hold in given situation without providing a procedures that describes *how* such results are to be obtained.

To make the difference between procedural and declarative styles of description clear, consider the problem of computing the positive square root of any given non-negative number, *x*. We can *specify* the result we seek in a clear and precise logical style by saying that, for any given non-negative number *x*, we require a value, *y*, such that $y^2 = x$. Such a *y*, squared, gives *x*, and this makes *y* a square root.

We would write this mathematically as $\forall x \in \mathbb{R} \mid x >= 0, y \in \mathbb{R} \mid y >= 0 \wedge y^2 = x$. In English, we'd pronounce this expression as, "for any value, *x*, in the real numbers, where *x* is greater than or equal to zero, the result is a value, *y*, also in the real numbers, where *y* is greater than or equal to zero and *y* squared is equal to *x*." (The word, *where*, here is also often pronounced as *such that*. Repeat it to yourself both ways until it feels natural to translate the math into spoken English.)

Let's look at this expression with care. First, the symbol, $\forall$, is read as *for all* or *for any*. Second, the symbol $\mathbb{R}$, is used in mathematical writing to denote the set of the *real numbers*, which includes the *integers* (whole numbers, such as *-1*, *0*, and *2*), the rational numbers (such as 2/3 and *1.5*), and the irrational numbers (such as *pi* and *e*). The symbol, $\in$, pronounced as *in*, represents membership of a value, here *x*, in a given set. The expression, $\forall x \in \mathbb{R}$ thus means "for any value, *x*, in the real numbers," or just "for any real number, *x*".

The vertical bar followed by the statement of the property, *x >= 0*, restricts the value being considered to one that satisfies the stated property. Here the value of *x* is restricted to being greater than or equal to zero. The formula including this constraint can thus be read as "for any non-negative real number, *x*." The set of non-negative real numbers is thus selected as the *domain* of the function that we are specifying.

The comma is our formula is a major break-point. It separates the specification of the *domain* of the function from a formula, after the comma, that specifies what value, if any, is associated with each value in the domain. You can think of the formula after the comma as the *body* of the function. Here it says, assuming that *x* is any non-negative real numner, that the associated value, sometimes called the *image* of *x* under the function, is a value, *y*, also in the real numbers (the *co-domain* of the function), such that *y* is both greater than or equal to zero equal *and* $y^2 = x$. The symbol, $\wedge$ is the logical symbol for *conjunction*, which is the operation that composes two smaller propositions or properties into a larger one that is true or satisfied if and only if both constituent propositions or properties are. The formula to the right of the comma thus picks out exactly the positive (or more accurate a non-negative) square root of *x*.

We thus have a precise specification of the positive square root function for non-negative real numbers. It is defined for every value in the domain insofar as every non-negative real number has a positive square root. It is also a *function* in that there is *at most one* value for any given argument. If we had left out the non-negativity *constraint* on *y* then for every *x* (except *0*) there would be *two* square roots, one positive and one negative. We would then no longer have a *function*, but rather a *relation*. A function must be *single-valued*, with at most one "result" for any given "argument".

We now have a *declarative specification* of the desired relationship between *x* and *y*. The definition is clear (once you understand the notation), it's concise, it's precise. Unfortunately, it isn't what we call *effective*. It

doesn't give us a way to actually *compute* the value of the square root of any $x$. You can't run a specification in the language of mathematical logic (at least not in a practical way).

## 3.3 Refining Declarative Specifications into Imperative Implementations

The solution is to *refine* our declarative specification, written in the language of mathematical logic, into a computer program, written in an imperative language: one that computes *exactly* the function we have specified. To refine means to add detail while also preserving the essential properties of the original. The details to be added are the procedural steps required to compute the function. The essence to be preserved is the value of the function at each point in its domain.

In short, we need a step-by-step procedure, in an imperative language, that, when *evaluated with a given actual parameter value*, computes exactly the specified value. Here's a program that *almost* does the trick. Written in the imperative language, Python, it uses Newton's method to compute *floating point* approximations of positive square roots of given non-negative *floating point* arguments.

```python
def sqrt(x):
    """for x>=0, return non-negative y such that y^2 = x"""
    estimate = x/2.0
    while True:
        newestimate = ((estimate+(x/estimate))/2.0)
        if newestimate == estimate:
            break
        estimate = newestimate
    return estimate
```

This procedure initializes and then repeatedly updates the values stored at two locations in memory, referred to by the two variables, *estimate* and *newestimate*. It repeats the update process until the process *converges* on the answer, which occurs when the values of the two variables become equal. The answer is then returned to the caller of this procedure.

Note that, following good programming style, we included an English rendering of the specification as a document string in the second line of the program. There are however several problems using English or other natural language comments to document specifications. First, natural language is prone to ambiguity, inconsistency, imprecision, and incompleteness. Second, because the document string is just a comment, there's no way for the compiler to check consistency between the code and this specification. Third, in practice, code evolves (is changed over time), and developers often forget, or neglect, to update comments, so, even if an implementation is initially consistent with a such a comment, inconsistencies can and often do develop over time.

In this case there is, in fact, a real, potentially catastrophic, mathematical inconsistency between the specification and what the program computes. The problem is that in Python, as in many everyday programming languages, so-called *real* numbers are not exactly the same as the real (*mathematical*) reals!

You can easily see what the problem is by using our procedure to compute the square root of 2.0 and by then multiplying that number by itself. The result of the computation is the number *1.41421356237*, which we already know has to be wrong to some degree, as the square root of two is an *irrational* number that cannot be represented by any non-terminating, non-repeating decimal. Indeed, if we multiply this number by itself, we get the number, *1.99999999999*. We end up in a situation in which *sqrt(2.0) \* sqrt(2.0)* isn't equal to 2.0!

The problem is that in Python, as in most industrial programming languages, *so-called* real numbers (often called *floating point* numbers) are represented in just 64 binary digits, and that permits only a finite number of digits after the decimal to be represented. And additional *low-order* bits are simply dropped, leading to what we call *floating-point roundoff errors.* That's what we're seeing here.

In fact, there are problems not only with irrational numbers but with rational numbers with repeating decimal expansions when represented in the binary notation of the IEEE-754 (2008) standard for floating point arithmetic. Try adding *1/10* to itself *10* times in Python. You will be surprised by the result. *1/10* is rational but its decimal form is repeating in base-2 arithmetic, so there's no way to represent *1/10* precisely as a floating point number in Python, Java, or in many other such languages.

There are two possible solutions to this problem. First, we could change the specification to require only that *y* squared be very close to *x* (within some specified margin of error). The we could show that the code satisfies this approximate definition of square root. An alternative would be to restrict our programming language to represent real numbers as rational numbers, use arbitrarily large integer values for numerators and denominators, and avoid defining any functions that produce irrational values as results. We'd represent *1/10* not as a 64-bit floating point number, for example, but simply as the pair of integers *(1,10)*.

This is the solution that Dafny uses. So-called real numbers in Dafny behave not like *finite-precision floating point numbers that are only approximate* in general, but like the *mathematical* real numbers they represent. The limitation is that not all reals can be represented (as values of the *real* type in Dafny. In particular, irrational numbers cannot be represented exactly as real numbers. (Of course they can't be represented exactly by IEEE-754 floating point numbers, either.) If you want to learn (a lot) more about floating point, or so-called *real*, numbers in most programming languages, read the paper by David Goldberg entitled, *What Every Computer Scientist Should Know About Floating-Point Arithmetic.* It was published in the March, 1991 issue of Computing Surveys. You can find it online.

## 3.4 Why Not a Single Language for Programming and Specification?

The dichotomy between specification logic and implementation code raises an important question? Why not just design a single language that's good for both?

The answer is that there are fundamental tradeoffs in language design. One of the most important is a tradeoff between *expressiveness*, on one hand, and *efficient execution*, on the other.

What we see in our square root example is that mathematical logic is highly *expressive*. Logic language can be used so say clearly *what* we want. On the other hand, it's hard using logic to say *how* to get it. In practice, mathematical logic is clear but can't be *run* with the efficiency required in practice.

On the other hand, imperative code states *how* a computation is to be carried out, but generally doesn't make clear *what* it computes. One would be hard-pressed, based on a quick look at the Python code above, for example, to explain *what* it does (but for the comment, which is really not part of the code).

We end up having to express *what* we want and *how* to get it in two different languages. This situation creates a difficult new problem: to verify that a program written in an imperative language satisfies, or *refines*, a specification written in a declarative language. How do we know, *for sure*, that a program computes exactly the function specified in mathematical logic?

This is the problem of program *verification*. We can *test* a program to see if it produces the specified outputs for *some* elements of the input domain, but in general it's infeasible to test *all* inputs. So how can we know that we have *built a program* right, where right is defined precisely by a formal (mathematical logic) specification) that requires that a program work correctly for all ($\forall$) inputs?

# FOUR

# PROBLEMS WITH IMPERATIVE CODE

There's no free lunch: One can have the expressiveness of mathematical logic, useful for specification, or one can have the ability to run code efficiently, along with indispensable ability to interact with an external environment provided by imperative code, but one can not have all of this at once at once.

A few additional comments about expressiveness are in order here. When we say that imperative programming languages are not as expressive as mathematical logic, what we mean is not ony that the code itself is not very explicit about what it computes. It's also that it is profoundly hard to fully comprehend what imperative code will do when run, in large part due precisely to the things that make imperative code efficient: in particular to the notion of a mutable memory.

One major problem is that when code in one part of a complex program updates a variable (the *state* of the program), another part of the code, far removed from the first, that might not run until much later, can read the value of that very same variable and thus be affected by actions taken much earlier by code far away in the program text. When programs grow to thousands or millions of lines of code (e.g., as in the cases of the Toyota unintended acceleration accident that we read about), it can be incredibly hard to understand just how different and seemingly unrelated parts of a system will interact.

As a special case, one execution of a procedure can even affect later executions of the same procedure. In pure mathematics, evaluating the sum of two and two *always* gives four; but if a procedure written in Python updates a *global* variable and then incoporates its value into the result the next time the procedure is called, then the procedure could easily return a different result each time it is called even if the argument values are the same. The human mind is simply not powerful enough to see what can happen when computations distant in time and in space (in the sense of being separated in the code) interact with each other.

A related problem occurs in imperative programs when two different variables, say $x$ and $y$, refer to the same memory location. When such *aliasing* occurs, updating the value of $x$ will also change the value of $y$, even though no explicit assignment to $y$ was made. A piece of code that assumes that $y$ doesn't change unless a change is made explicitly might fail catastrophically under such circumstances. Aliasing poses severe problems for both human understanding and also machine analysis of code written in imperative languages.

Imperative code is thus potentially *unsafe* in the sense that it can not only be very hard to fully understand what it's going to do, but it can also have effects on the world, e.g., by producing output directing some machine to launch a missile, fire up a nuclear reactor, steer a commercial aircraft, etc.

# FIVE

# PURE FUNCTIONAL PROGRAMMING AS RUNNABLE MATHEMATICS

What we'd really like would be a language that gives us everything: the expressiveness and the *safety* of mathematical logic (there's no concept of a memory in logic, and thus no possibility for unexpected interactions through or aliasing of memory), with the efficiency and interactivity of imperative code. Sadly, there is no such language.

Fortunately, there is an important point in the space between these extremes: in what we call *pure functional,* as opposed to imperative, *programming* languages. Pure functional languages are based not on commands that update memories and perform I/O, but on the definition of functions and their application to data values. The expressiveness of such languages is high, in that code often directly refects the mathematical definitions of functions. And because there is no notion of an updateable (mutable) memory, aliasing and interactions between far-flung parts of programs through *global variables* simply cannot happen. Furthermore, one cannot perform I/O in such languages. These languages thus provide far greater safety guarantees than imperative languages. Finally, unlike mathematical logic, code in functional languages can be run with reasonable efficiency, though often not with the same efficiency as in, say, C++.

In this chapter, you will see how functional languages allow one to implement runnable programs that closely mirror the mathematical definitions of the functions that they implement.

## 5.1 The identify function (for integers)

An *identity function* is a function whose values is simply the value of the argument to which it is applied. For example, the identify function applied to an integer value, $x$, just evaluates to the value of $x$, itself. In the language of mathematical logic, the definition of the function would be written like this.

$$\forall x \in \mathbb{Z}, x.$$

In English, this would be pronounced, "for all ($\forall$) values, $x$, in ($\in$) the set of integers ($\mathbb{Z}$), the function simply reduces to value of $x$, itself. The infinite set of integers is usually denoted in mathematical writing by a script or bold Z. We will use that convention in these notes.

While such a mathematical definition is not "runnable", we can *implement* it as a runnable program in pure functional language. The code will then closely reflects the abstract mathematical definition. And it will run! Here's an implementation of *id* written in the functional sub-language of Dafny.

```
function method id (x: int): int { x }
```

The code declares *id* to be what Dafny calls a "function method", which indicates two things. First, the *function* keyword states that the code will be written in a pure functional, not in an imperative, style. Second, the *method* keyword instructs the compiler to produce runnable code for this function.

Let's look at the code in detail. First, the name of the function is defined to be *id*. Second, the function is defined to take just one argument, *x*, declared of type *int*. The is the Dafny type whose values represent integers (negative, zero, and positive whole number) of any size. The Dafny type *int* thus represents (or *implements*) the mathematical set, $\mathbb{Z}$, of all integers. The *int* after the argument list and colon then indicates that, when applied to an int, the function returns (or *reduces to*) a value of type *int*. Finally, within the curly braces, the expression *x*, which we call the *body* of this function definition, specifies the value that this function reduces to when applied to any *int*. In particular, when applied to avalue, *x*, the function application simply reduces to the value of *x* itself.

Compare the code with the abstract mathematical definition and you will see that but for details, they are basicaly *isomorphic* (a word that means identical in structure). It's not too much of a stretch to say that pure functional programs are basically runnable mathematics.

Finally, we need to know how expressions involving applications of this function to arguments are evaluated. They fundamental notion at the heart of functional programming is this: to evaluate a function application expression, such as *id(4)*, you substiute the value of the argument (here *4*) for every occurence of the argument variable (here *x*) in the body of the function definition, the you evaluate that expression and return the result. In this case, we substite *4* for the *x* in the body, yielding the literal expression, *4*, which, when evaluated, yeilds the value *4*, and that's the result.

## 5.2 Data and function types

Before moving on to more interesting functions, we must mention the concepts of *types* and *values* as they pertain to both *data* and *functions*. Two types appear in the example of the *id* function. The first, obvious, one is the type *int*. The *values* of this type are *data* values, namely values representing integers. The second type, which is less visible in the example, is the type of the the function, *id*, itself. As the function takes an argument of type *int* and also returns a value of type *int*, we say that the type of *id* is $int \rightarrow int$. You can pronounce this type as *int to int*.

## 5.3 Other function values of the same type

There are many (indeed an uncountable infinity of) functions that convert integer values to other integer values. All such functions have the same type, namely $int \rightarrow int$, but they constitute different function *values*. While the type of a function is specified in the declaration of the function argument and return types, a function *value* is defined by the expression comprising the *body* of the function.

An example of a different function of the same type is what we will call *inc*, short for *increment*. When applied to an integer value, it reduces to (or *returns*) that value plus one. Mathematically, it is defined as $\forall x \in \mathbb{Z}, x + 1$. For example, *inc(2)* reduces to *3*, and *inc(-2)*, to *-1*.

Here's a Dafny functional program that implements this function. You should be able to understand this program with ease. Once again, take a moment to see the relationship between the abstract mathematical definition and the concrete code. They are basically isomorphic. The pure functional programmer is writing *runnable mathematics*.

```
function method inc (x: int): int { x + 1 }
```

Another example of a function of the same type is, *square*, defined as returing the square of its integer argument. Mathematically it is the function, $\forall x \in \mathbb{Z}, x * x$. And here is a Dafny implementation.

```
function method h (x: int): int { x * x }
```

Evaluating expressions in which this function is applied to an argument happens as previously described. To evaluate *square(4)*, for example, you rewrite the body, *x \* x*, replacing every *x* with a *4*, yielding the expression *4 \* 4*, then you evaluate that expression and return the result, here *16*. Function evaluation is done by substituting actual parameter values for all occurrences of corresponding formal parameters in the body of a function, evaluating the resulting expression, and returning that result.

Recursive function definitions and implementations ============================================

Many mathematical functions are defined *recursively*. Consider the familiar *factorial* function. An informal explanation of what the function produces when applied to a natural number (a non-negative integer), *n*, is the product of natural numbers from *1* to *n*.

That's a perfectly understandable definition, but it's not quite precise (or even correct) enough for a mathematician. There are at least two problems with this definition. First, it does not define the value of the function *for all* natural numbers. In particular, it does not say what the value of the function is for zero. Second, you can't just extend the definition by saying that it yields the product of all the natural numbers from zero to *n*, because that is always zero!

Rather, if the function is to be defined for an argument of zero, as we require, then we had better define it to have the value one when the argument is zero, to preserve the product of all the other numbers larger than zero that we might have multiplied together to produce the result. The trick is to write a mathematical definition of factorial in two cases: one for the value zero, and one for any other number.

$$factorial(n) := \forall n \in \mathbb{Z} \mid n >= 0, \begin{cases} \text{if n=0,} & 1, \\ \text{otherwise,} & n * factorial(n-1). \end{cases}$$

To pronounce this mathematical definition in English, one would say that for any integer, *n*, such that *n* is greater than or equal to zero, *factorial(n)* is one if *n* is zero and is otherwise *n* times *factorial(n-1)*.

Let's analyze this definition. First, whereas in earlier examples we left mathematical definitions anonymous, here we have given a name, *factorial*, to the function, as part of its mathematical definition. We have to do this because we need to refer to the function within its own definition. When a definition refers to the thing that is being defined, we call the definition *recursive*.

Second, we have restricted the *domain* of the function, which is to say the set of values for which it is defined, to the non-negative integers only, the set known as the *natural numbers*. The function simply isn't defined for negative numbers. Mathematicians usually use the symbol, $\mathbb{N}$ for this set. We could have written the definition a little more concisely using this notation, like this:

$$factorial(n) := \forall n \in \mathbb{N}, \begin{cases} \text{if n=0,} & 1, \\ \text{otherwise,} & n * factorial(n-1). \end{cases}$$

Here, then, is a Dafny implementation of the factorial function.

```
function method fact(n: int): int
   requires n >= 0 // for recursion to be well founded
{
    if (n==0) then 1
    else n * fact(n-1)
}
```

This code exactly mirrors our first mathematical definition. The restriction on the domain is expressed in the *requires* clause of the program. This clause is not runnable code. It's a specification: a *predicate* (a proposition with a parameter) that must hold for the program to be used. Dafny will insist that this function only ever be applied to values of *n* that have the *property* of being $>= 0$. A predicate that must be true for a program to be run is called a *pre-condition*.

To see how the recursion works, consider the application of *factorial* to the natural number, *3*. We know that the answer should be *6*. *The evaluation of the expression, \*factorial(3)*, works as for any function application

expression: first you subsitute the value of the argument(s) for each occurrence of the formal parameters in the body of the function; then you evaluate the resulting expression (recursively!) and return the result. For *factorial(3)*, this process leads through a sequence of intermediate expressions as follows (leaving out a few details that should be easy to infer):

$$factorial \ (3) \ ; \text{a function application expression}$$
$$if \ (3 == 0) \ then \ 1 \ else \ (3 * factorial \ (3 - 1)) \ ; \text{expand body with parameter/argument substitution}$$
$$if \ (3 == 0) \ then \ 1 \ else \ (3 * factorial \ (2)) \ ; \text{evaluate } (3 - 1)$$
$$if \ false \ then \ 1 \ else \ (3 * factorial \ (2)) \ ; \text{evaluate } (3 == 0)$$
$$(3 * factorial \ (2)) \ ; \text{evaluate } ifThenElse$$
$$(3 * (if \ (2 == 0) \ then \ 1 \ else \ (2 * factorial \ (1)))) \ ; \text{etc}$$
$$(3 * (2 * factorial \ (1)))$$
$$(3 * (2 * (if \ (1 == 0) \ then \ 1 \ else \ (1 * factorial \ (0)))))$$
$$(3 * (2 * (1 * factorial \ (0))))$$
$$(3 * (2 * (1 * (if \ (0 == 0) \ then \ 1 \ else \ (0 * factorial \ (-1))))))$$
$$(3 * (2 * (1 * (if \ true \ then \ 1 \ else \ (0 * factorial \ (-1))))))$$
$$(3 * (2 * (1 * 1)))$$
$$(3 * (2 * 1))$$
$$(3 * 2)$$
$$6$$

The evaluation process continues until the function application expression is reduced to a data value. That's the answer!

It's important to understand how recursive function application expressions are evaluated. Study this example with care. Once you're sure you see what's going on, go back and look at the mathematical definition, and convince yourself that you can understand it *without* having to think about *unrolling* of the recursion as we just did.

Finally we note that the the precondition is essential. If it were not there in the mathematical definition, the definition would not be what mathematicians call *well founded*: the recursive definition might never stop looping back on itself. Just think about what would happen if you could apply the function to *-1*. The definition would involve the function applied to *-2*. And the definition of that would involve the function applied to *-3*. You can see that there will be an infinite regress.

Similarly, if Dafny would allow the function to be applied to *any* value of type *int*, it would be possible, in particular, to apply the function to negative values, and that would be bad! Evaluating the expression, *factorial(-1)* would involve the recursive evaluation of the expression, *factorial(-2)*, and you can see that the evaluation process would never end. The program would go into an "infinite loop" (technically an unbounded recursion). By doing so, the program would also violate the fundamental promise made by its type: that for *any* integer-valued argument, an integer result will be produced. That can not happen if the evaluation process never returns a result. We see the precondition in the code, implementing the domain restriction in the mathematical definition, is indispensible. It makes the definition sound and it makes the code correct!

## 5.4 Dafny is a Program Verifier

Restricting the domain of factorial to non-negative integers is critical. Combining the non-negative property of ever value to which the function is applied with the fact that every recursive application is to a smaller value of $n$, allows us to conclude that no *infinite decreasing chains* are possible. Any application of the function to a non-negative integer $n$ will terminate after exactly $n$ recursive calls to the function. Every non-negative integer, $n$ is finite. So every call to the function will terminate.

Termination is a critical *property* of programs. The proposition that our factorial program with the pre-condition in place always terminates is true as we've argued. Without the precondition, the proposition is false.

Underneath Dafny's "hood," it has a system for proving propositions about (i.e., properties of) programs. Here we see that It generates a propostion that each recursive function terminates; and it requires a proof that each such proposition is true.

With the precondition in place, there not only is a proof, but Dafny can find it on its own. If you remove the precondition, Dafny won't be able to find a proof, because, as we just saw, there isn't one: the proposition that evaluation of the function always terminates is not true. In this case, because it can't prove termination, Dafny will issue an error stating, in effect, that there is the possibility that the program will infinitely loop. Try it in Dafny. You will see.

In some cases there will be proofs of important propositions that Dafny nevertheless can't find it on its own. In such cases, you may have to help it by giving it some additional propositions that it can verify and that help point it in the right direction. We'll see more of this later.

The Dafny language and verification system is powerful mechansim for finding subtle bugs in code, but it require a knowledge of more than just programming. It requires an understanding of specification, and of the languages of logic and proofs in which specifications of code are expressed and verified.

# FORMAL VERIFICATION OF IMPERATIVE PROGRAMS

In this chapter, we first elaborate on the idea that pure functional programming make for mathematically clear but potentially inefficient specifications, while imperative code makes for efficient code but is hardly clear as to its purpose, and is thus hard to reason about. To get the benefits of both, we use functional programming to write key parts of specifications for imperative code, and then we use tools or manual methods to *prove* that the imperative code does what such a speification requires.

## 6.1 Performance vs. Understandability

To get a clearer sense of the potential differences in performance between a pure functional program and an imperative program that compute the same function, and tradeoffs one makes between clarity of intent and execution speed, consider our recursive definition of the Fibonacci function.

We start off knowing that if the argument to the function, *n*, is *0* or *1*, the value of the function for that *n* is just *n* itself. In other words, the sequence, *fib(i)* of *Fibonacci numbers indexed by i*, starts with, $[0, 1, \ldots]$. For any $n >= 2$, *fib(n)*, is the sum of the previous two values. To compute the *n'th ($n >= 2$)* Fibonacci number, we can thus start with the first two, sum them up to get the next one, then iterate this process, computing the next value on each iteration, until we've got the result.

Footnote: by convention we index sequences starting at zero rather than one. The first element in such a sequence thus has index *0*, the second has index *1*, and the *n'th* has index *n - 1*. For example, *fib(6)* refers to the *7th* Fibonacci number. You should get used to thinking in terms of zero-indexed sequences.

Now consider our recursive definition, *fib(n)*. It's *pure math*: concise, precise, elegant. And because we've written it in a functional language, we can even run it. However, it might not give us the performance we require. An imperative program, by constrast, is *code*. It's cryptic but it can be very efficient when run.

To get a sense of performance differences, consider the evaluation of each of two programs to compute *fib(5)*: our functional program and an imperative one that we will develop in this chapter.

Consider the imperative program. If the argument, *n*, is either zero or one, the answer is just returned. If $n >= 2$ an answer has to be computed. In this case, the program will repeatedly add together the previous two values of the function, starting with *0* and *1*, until it computes the result for *n*. The program returns that value.

For a given value of *n*, what is the cost of computing an answer? The cost will be dominated by the work done inside the loop body; and on each iteration of the loop, a fixed amount of work is done; so it's not a bad idea to use the number of loop body executions as a measure of the cost of computing an answer for an argument, *n*.

So, what does it cost to compute *fib(5)*? Well, we need to execute the loop body to compute *fib(i)* for values of *i* of *2, 3, 4,* and *5*. It thus takes *4* loop body iterations to compute *fib(5)*. To compute the 10th element requires that the loop body execute for *i* in the range of *[2, 3, …, 10]*. That's nine iterations. It's easy to see that for any value of *n*, the cost to compute *fib(n)* will be *n-1* loop body iterations. We can compute the

*100,000th* Fibonacci number by running a simple loop body *about* that many times. On a modern computer, the computation will be completed very quickly.

The functional program, on the other hand, is evaluated by repeated evaluation of nested recursive function applications until base cases are reached. Let's think about the cost of evaluation for increasing values of $n$ and try to see a pattern. We'll measure computational complexity now in terms of the number of function evaluations (rather than loop bodies executed) required to produce a final answer.

To compute *fib(0)* or *fib(1)* requires just *1* function evaluation (the first and only call to the function), as these are base cases requiring no further recursion. To compute *fib(2)* however requires *3* evalations of *fib*: one for each of *fib(1)* and *fib(0)* plus the evaluation of the top-level function. The relationship between $n$ and the number of function evaluations currently looks like this: $\{(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 3), ...\}$. The first element of each pair is $n$ and the second element is the cost to compute *fib(n)*.

What about when $n$ is *3*? Computing this requires answers for *fib(2)*, which by the resuts we just computed costs *3* evaluations, and for *fib(1)*, which costs *1*, for a total of *5* evaluations including the top-level evaluation. Computing *fib(4)* requires that we compute *fib(3)* and *fib(2)*, costing *5 + 3*, or *8* evaluations, plus the original, top-level call, for a total of 9. For *fib(5)* we need *9 + 5*, or *14* plus one more, making *15* evaluations. The relation of cost to $n$ (the problem size) is now like this: $\{(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 3), (3, 5), (4, 9), (5, 15), ...\}$.

In general, the number of evaluations needed to evaluate *fib(i+1)* is the sum of the numbers required to evaluate *fib(i)* plus the number to evaluate *fib(i-1)* plus *1*. If we use $C$ to represent the cost function, then we could say, $C(n) = C(n - 1) + C(n - 2) + 1$. This kind of function is called a recurrence relation, and there are clever ways to solve such functions to determine what function $C$ may be. Of course we can also write a recursive function to compute $C(n)$, if we need only to compute it for relatively small values of $n$.

Now that we have the formula, we can quickly compute the costs to compute *fib(n)* for numerous values of $n$. The number of evaluations needed to compute *fib(6)* is *15 + 9 + 1*, i.e., 25. For *fib(7)* it's *41*. For *fib(8)*, *\*67*; for *fib(9), 109*; for *fib(10), 177*; and for *fib(11), 286* function evaluations.

One thing is clear: The cost to compute the *n'th* Fibonacci number, as measured by the number of function evaluations, using our beautiful functional program, is growing much more quickly than $n$ itself, and indeed it is growing faster and faster as $n$ increases. We would say the cost is *super-linear*, whereas with our imperative program, the number of loop body interations grows *linearly* in $n$.

How exactly does the cost of the pure functional program compare? One thing to notice is that the cost of computing a Fibonacci element with our functional program is related to the Fibonacci sequence itself! The first two values in the *cost* sequence are *1* and *1*, and each subsequence element is the sum of the previous two *plus 1*. It's not exactly the Fibonacci sequence, but it turns out to grow at a very similar rate. The Fibonacci sequence, thus also the cost of computing it recursively, grows at what turns out to be a rate *exponential* in $n$, with an exponent of about *1.6*. Increasing $n$ by *1* doesn't just add a little to the cost; it almost doubles it (multiplying it by a factor of *1.6*).

No matter how small the exponent (with any exponent greater than one), exponential functions eventually grow very quickly. In the limit, any exponential function grows faster than any polynomial no matter how high in rank it is and no matter how large its coefficients are.

The exponential-in-$n$ cost of our clear but inefficient functional program grows far faster than the cost of our ugly but efficient imperative program as we increase $n$. For any even modestly large value of $n$ (e.g., greater than 50 or so), it will be impractical to use the pure functional program, whereas the imperative program will reasonably run quickly even on a small personal computer for values of $n$ well into in the millions. What eventually slows it down is not the number of additions that it has to do but the sizes of the numbers that it has to add.

You can already see that the cost to compute *fib(n)* recursively for values of $n$ larger than just ten or so is much greater than the cost to compute it iteratively. Our mathematical/functional definition is clear ("intellectually tractable") but inefficient. The imperative program, on the other hand, is efficient, but not at all transparent. We need the latter program for practical computation. But how do we ensure that it implements the same function that we expressed in our elegant mathematical definition?

## 6.2 Specification, Implementation, and Verification

We address such problems by combining a few ideas. First, we use logic, including mathematical specifications written in part using functional programming, to express *declarative* specifications. Such specification precisely define *what* a given imperative program must compute, and in particular what results it must return as a function of the arguements it receives, without saying *how* the computation should be done.

We can use functions defined in the pure functional programming style as parts of specifications, e.g., as giving a mathematical definition of the *factorial* function that an imperative program will then have to implement.

Second, we implement the specified program in an imperative language. Ideally we do so in a way that supports logical reasoning about its behavior. For example, we have to specify not only the relationship between argument and result values that are required, but also how loops are designed to work in our code. We then need to design loops in ways that make it easier to explain, in formal logic, how they do what they are meant to do.

Finally, we use logical proofs to *verify* that the program satisifies its specification. Later in this course, we'll see how to create such proofs ourselves. For now we'll be happy to let Dafny generate them for us mostly automatically!

The rest of this chapter develops these ideas in more depth with concrete examples. First we explain how formal specifications in mathematical logic for imperative programs are often organized. Next we explore how writing imperative programs without the benefits of specification languages and verifications tools can make it hard to spot bugs in code. Next we enhance our implementation of the factorial function with specifications, show how Dafny flags the bug, and fix the program. Doing this requires that we deepen the way we understand loops. We end with a detailed presentation of the verification of an imperative program to compute values in the Fibonacci sequence. Given any natural number $n$, our program must return the value of *fib(n)*, but it must also do it efficiently. The design and precise, logical description of key properties of a loop is once again the heart of the problem. We will see how Dafny can help us to reason rigorously about loops, and that giving it a little help enables it to reason about them for us.

## 6.3 Declarative Input-Output Specifications

First, we use mathematical logic to *declaratively specify* properties of the behaviors that we require of programs written in *imperative* languages. For example, we might require that, when given *any* natural number, $n$, a program compute and return the value of the *factorial* of $n$, the mathematical definition of which we've given as *fact(n)*. In general, we want to specify how the results returned by an imperative program relate to the arguments on which it was run. We call such a specification an *input-output* specification. (Here we ignore *side-effect* behaviors such as reading from and writing to input and output devices.)

Specifications about required relationships between argument values and return results specify *what* a program must compute without specifying how it should be done. Specifications are thus *abstract*: they omit *implementation details*, leaving it to the programmer to decide how best to *refine* the specification into efficient code.

For example we might specify that a program (1) must accept any integer valued argument greater than or equal to zero (a piece of a specification that we call a *precondition*), and (2) that as long as the precondition holds, then it must return the factorial of the given argument value (a *postcondition*).

### 6.3.1 Input-Output Relations

In purely mathematical terms, a specification of this kind defines a *binary relation* between argument (input) and return (output) values, and imposes on the program a requirement that whenever it is given the first

value in such an *input-output* pair, it must compute a second (output) value so that the pair, $(input, output)$, is in the specified relation.

### 6.3.2 Relations and Functions

A binary relation in ordinary mathematics is just a set of pairs of values. A function is a binary relation with at most one pair with a given first value. A function is a *single-valued* relation. What we often need to specify, in particular, is an input-output *function*.

For example, pairs in the factorial relation include $(0, 1), (1, 1), (2, 2), (3, 6), (4, 24)$ and $(5, 120)$, but not the pair $(5, 25)$. Some of the pairs in the Fibonacci relation include $\{(0, 0), (1, 1), (2, 1), (3, 2), (5, 3)$ and *(6,5)*. These relations are also *functions* because there is *at most* one pair with a given first element. Finally, these functions are also said to be *total* because for *every* natural number, there is a pair with that number as its first element.

On the other hand, square root is a *relation*, a set of pairs of real numbers, but not a *function*, because it is not singled valued. Both of the pairs, $(4, 2)$ and $(4, -2)$, which are distinct but have same first element, are in the relation. That is so because both *2* and *-2* are square roots of *4*.

### 6.3.3 Total and Partial Functions

We also note that the square root relation *on the real numbers* is what we call *partial* rather than total: in that it is not defined for some real numbers. In particular, it is not defined for (i.e., it does not have any pairs where the first element is) any negative real number.

### 6.3.4 Turning Partial Functions into Total Functions

Partial functions and non-function relations both present problems for programmers. Let's first consider relations that sometimes have *more* than one value of a given type for a given argument. What value should a program return?

The square root function is a good example. Given a positive argument there will be *two* square roots, one positive and one negative. If the function is require to return a single number as an answer, which one should it return?

There is really no good answer. Rather, the solution is usually to change the program specification slightly. For example, rather than promising to return *the* square root (a concept that is not well defined when there are two square roots for the same number) such a program might promise to return the non-negative square root, of which there is always just one (given a non-negative argument. What we have done here is to implement a different relation, and one that is now also a function.

A different way to re-formulate the square root *relation* as a *function* would be to view it as returning a single *set* of values as a result: a set containing all of the square roots of a given argument. The pair $(4, \{2, -2\})$ is in this relation, for example, and the relation is also a function in that there is only one such pair with any given first element.

So far we have dealt with the situation where a relation holds more than one result for a given argument. The other difficult situation occurs when there is no result or a given argument, i.e., when the function or relation is undefined for some argument values. What should a program return then?

Once again, there's no good answer. Rather, we generally tweak the specification to require the implementation of a slightly different relation. One approach would be to narrow the domain of values that the *program* can take to the domain on which the actual mathematical function is defined. So instead of specifying a square root function as taking any real number, we could specficy that it requires that an argument value be non-negative. When we add such a precondition to a method or function specification in Dafny, the effect is

that Dafny checks every place in the code where the method or function is called to verify that the argument values satisfy that pre-condition.

Alternately, we might "tweak" the type of the return value, so that the program can return some value of the promised type, even if the underlying mathematical function is not defined for the arguments. So, for example, if instead of promising to return a single number as a square root we promise to return a set of numbers, then in cases where the function is undefined, we just return the empty set of numbers. In this case, the empty set as a return value can be interpreted as signifying that no numerical answer could be returned.

Finally, in languages such as Java and Python, when a program encounters a state where a valid value cannot be computed and returned, it can invoke an error handling routine to take some kind of "exceptional" action. This is the purpose of exceptions in Java, Python, etc. We will not entertain the use of exceptions in this course.

## 6.4 Imperative Implementation

Having written a formal specification of the required *input-output* behavior of a program, we next write imperative code in a manner, and in a language, that supports the use of formal logic to *reason* about whether the program refines (implements) its formal specification. One can use formal specifications when programming in any language, but it helps greatly if the language has strong, static type checking. It is even better if the language supports formal specification and logical reasoning mechanisms right alongside of its imperative and functional programming capabilities. Dafny is such a language and system. It is not just a language, but a verifier.

In addition to choosing a language with features that help to support formal reasoning, we sometimes also aim to write imperative code in a way that makes it easier to reason about formally. As we'll see below, for example, the way that we write our while loops can make it easier or harder to reason about their correctness. Even whether we iterate from zero up to $n$ or from $n$ down to zero can affect the difficulty of writing specification elements for a program.

## 6.5 Formal Verification

The aim of formal verification is to deduce (to use deductive logic to *prove*) that, as written, a program satisfies its specification. In more detail, if we're given a program, $C$ with a precondition, $P$, and a postcondition $Q$, we want a proof that verifies that if $C$ is started in a state that satisfies $P$ and if it terminates (doesn't go into an infinite loop), that it ends in a state that satisfies $Q$. We call this property *partial correctness*.

We write the proposition that $C$ is partially correct (that if it's started in a state that satisfies the assertion, $P$, and that if it terminates, then it will do so in a state that satisfies assertion $Q$) as $P\{C\}Q$. This is a so-called *Hoare triple*, named after the famous computer scientist, Sir Anthony (Tony) Hoare. It is nothing other than a proposition that claims that $C$ satisfies its *pre-condition/post-condition* specification. Another way to read it is as saying that the combination of the pre-condition being satisfied and the the program being run implies that the post-condition will be satisfied.

In addition to a proof of partial correctness, we usually do want to know that a program also does always terminate. When we have a proof of both $P\{C\}Q$ and that the program always terminates, then we have a proof of *total correctness*. Dafny is a programming system that allows us to specify $P$ and $Q$ and it then formally, and to a considerable extent automatically, verifies both $P \{ C \} Q$ and termination. That is, Dafny produces proofs of total correctness.

It is important to bear in mind that a proof that a program refines (implements) its formal specification does not necessarily mean that it is fit for its intended purpose! If the specification is wrong, then all bets are off,

even if the program is correct relative to its specification. The problem of *validating* specification againts real-world needs is separate from that of *verifying* that a given program implements its specification correctly. Formal methods can help here, as well, by verifying that *specifications* have certain desired properties, but formal validation of specifications is not our main concern at the moment.

## 6.6 Case Study: The Factorial Function

So far the material in this chapter has been pretty abstract. Now we'll see what it means in practice.

### 6.6.1 A Buggy Implementation

To start, let's consider an ordinary imperative program, as you might have written in Python or Java, for computing values of the factorial function. The name of the function is the only indication here of the intended behavior of this program. There is no clear specification.

The program takes an argument of type nat (which guarantees that the argument has the property of being non-negative). It then returns a nat which the programmer implicitly claims (given the function name) is the factorial of the argument.

```
method factorial(n: nat) returns (f: nat)
{
    if (n == 0)
    {
        return 1;
    }
    var t: nat := n;
    var a: nat := 1;
    while (t !=  0)
    {
        a := a * n;
        t := t - 1;
    }
    f := a;
}
```

It's not immediately obvious whether this code is correct or not, relative to what we know it's meant to do. Sadly, this program also contains a bug. Try to find it. Reason about the behavior of the program when the argument is 0, 1, 2, 3, etc. Does it always compute the right result? Where is the bug? What is wrong? And how could this logical error have been detected automatically?

### 6.6.2 Specifications Establish Correctness Criteria

A key problem is that the program lacks a precise specification. The program does *something*, taking a nat and possibly returning a *nat* (unless it goes into an infinite loop) but there's no way to analyze its correctness in the absence of a specification that defines what it even means to be correct.

Now let's see what happens when we add a formal specification. Look at the following code block. That *n >= 0* continues to be expressed by the *type* of the argument, *n*, being *nat*. However, we have now added a postcondition that *ensures* that the return result will be the factorial of *n* as defined by our functional program! What we assert is that the result produced by our imperative code is the same result that *would have been produced* if we had run the functional program.

```
method factorial(n: nat) returns (f: nat)
    ensures f == fact(n)
{
    if (n == 0)
    {
        return 1;
    }
    var t := n;
    var a := 1;
    while (t !=  0)
    {
        a := a * n;
        t := t - 1;
    }
    return a;
}
```

With a specification in place, Dafny now reports that it cannot guarantee—formally prove to itself—that the *postcondition* is guaranteed to hold. Generating proofs is hard, not only for people but also for machines. In fact, one of seminal results of 20th century mathematical logic was to prove that there is no general-purpose algorithm for proving propositions in mathematical logic. That's good news for mathematicians! If this weren't true, we wouldn't need them!

So, the best that a machine can do is to try to find a proof for any given proposition. Sometimes proofs are easy to generate. For example, it's easy to prove *1 = 1* by the *reflexive* propery of equality. Other propositions can be hard to prove. Proving that programs in imperative languages satisfy declarative specifications can be hard.

When Dafny fails to verify a program (find a proof that it satisfies its specification), there is one of two reasons. Either the program really does fail to satisfy its specification; or the program is good but Dafny does not have enough information to know how to prove it.

With the preceding program, the postcondition really isn't satisfied due to the bug in the program. When Dafny fails to verify, it gives us a strong reason to double-check our code to be sure we have not made some kind of mistake in reasoning.

But even if the program were correct, Dafny would still need a little more than is given here to prove it. In particular, Dafny would need a litte more information about how the while loop behaves. It turns out that providing such extra information about while loops is where much of the difficulty lies.

### 6.6.3 A Verified Implementation of the Factorial Function

Here, then, is a verified imperative program for computing factorial. We start by documenting the overall program specification. The key element here is the ensures clause. This clause links our imperative program with our functional specification and tells Dafny to make sure that the reuqired relationship holds.

```
method verified_factorial(n: nat) returns (f: nat)
    ensures f == fact(n)
```

Now for the body of the method. First, if we're looking at the case where *n==0* we just return the right answer immediately. There is no need for any further computation.

```
if (n == 0)
{
    return 1;
}
```

The rest of the code handles the case where $n > 1$. At this point in the program execution, we believe that $n$ must be greater than zero. We would have just returned if it were zero, and it can't be negative because its type is *nat*. We can nevertheless formally assert (write a proposition about the state of the program) that $n$ is greater than zero. Dafny will try to (and here will successfully) verify that the assertion is true at this point in the program, no matter what path through conditionals, while loops, commands led to this point in the program.

```
assert n > 0;
```

To compute an answer for the non-zero input case, we will use a loop. We can do this by using a variable, a, to hold a "partial factorial value" in the form of a product of the numbers from n down to a loop index, "i," that we start at n and decrement, terminating the loop when $n==0$.

At each point just before, during, and right after the loop, $a$ is a product of the numbers from $n$ down to but not including $i$, and the value of $i$ represents how much product-computing work remains to be done. So, for example, if we're computing factorial(10) and a holds the value $10 * 9$, then $i$ must be $8$ because multiplying $a$ by the factors from $8$ to $1$ remains to be done.

A critical "invariant" then is that if you multiply $a$ by the factorial of $i$ you get the the factorial of $n$. When we say that this is an invariant, we mean that it holds before and also after any execution of the loop body, but not necessarily within the loop body. In particular, when $i$ gets down to $0$, this relation means that $a$ must contain the final result, because $a * fact(0)$ will then equal $fact(n)$ and $fact(0)$ is just $1$, so $a$ must equal $fact(n)$.

This is how we design loops so that we can be confident that they do what we want tem to do. So now let's go through the steps required to implement our looping strategy.

Step 1. Set up state for the loop to work. We first initializie a := 1 and i := n.

```
var i: nat := n;    // nat type of i explicit
var a := 1;         // can let Dafny infer it
```

It would now be a good idea to ask Dafny to check that the invariant holds. See the next bit of code, below. Note that we are again using our pure functional definition, *fact*, as a *specification* of the function we're implementing.

In Dafny, we can use matnematical logic to express what must be true at any given point in the execution of a program in the form of an "assertion." Here we assert that our loop invariant holds. The Dafny verifier tries to prove that the assertion is a true propsition about the state of the program when control reaches this point, no matter what path might have been taken to arrive at this point.

```
assert a * fact(i) == fact(n); // "invariant"
```

Step 2: Now we write the actual loop command. Recall how a *while* loop works. To evaluate a loop, one evaluates the loop condition. If the result is false, the loop body does not execute and the loop terminates. Otherwise, the loop body is executed once and then the whole loop is run again (starting with a new evaluation of the loop condition).

We want our loop body to run at least once, as we already handled the case where it doesn't need to run at all. It will run if i > 0. What is i? We initialized it to n and haven't change it since then so it must still be equal to n. Do we know that n is greater than 0? We do, because (1) it can't be negative owning to its type, and (2) it can't be 0 because if it were 0 the program would already have returned.

We can now do better than just reasoning in our heads. We can also use logic to express what we believe to be true and let Dafny try to check it for us automatically.

```
assert i > 0;
```

Now if $i$ is one, then the loop body will run once. The value of $a$, which starts at 1, will be multiplied by i, which is 1, then i will be decremented, taking the the value 0. The loop will be run again, but the loop condition will be found to be false, and to the loop body will not be executed and the loop will terminate. When it does, it will leave $a$ with the value 1, which is the right answer.

```
while (i >  0)
    invariant 0 <= i <= n
    invariant fact(n) == a * fact(i)
{
    a := a * i;
    i := i - 1;
}
```

If $i$ is greater than 1, the loop body will execute, multiplying $a$ by the current value of $i$ and $i$ will be decremented. The vaue of $a$ will be the partial value of the factorial computed so far, and the value of $i$ will represent the work that remains to be done. When $i$ reaches zero, all the work will be done, and $a$ will contain the final result.

However, Dafny cannot determine on its own that this will be the case. What it needs to know to reason "mechanically" about the program is a bit of additional information about what remains true no matter *how* many times the loop body executes (zero or more). That information is expressed in the loop *invariants*. The first one is true but not of much use. The second one is the key to enabling Dafny to verify that after the loop, $a == fact(n)$.

The invariant itself just says that at all points before and after the loop body executes, that partial factorial value computed so far times the factorial of $i$ (which remains to be computed) is the answer that we seek. Once the loop is done we (and Dafny) *also* know that $i == 0$. It is the combination of the invariant and this fact that enables Dafny to see that it must be the case that $a == fact(n)$.

We can verify by using asserts after the loop that our beliefs about what the state of the program must be are correct. First, let's have Dafny check that the loop condition is now false.

```
assert !(i > 0);
```

We can also have Dafny check that our loop invariant still holds.

```
assert a * fact(i) == fact(n);
```

And now comes the most crucial step of all in our reasoning. We can deduce that $a$ now holds the correct answer. That this is so follows from the conjunction of the two assertions we just made. First, that $i$ is not greater than $0$ and given that its type is *nat*, the only possible value it can have now is $0$. That's what we'd expect, as it is the condition on which the loop terminates (which it just did). But better than just saying all of this, let us also formalize, document, and check it using the Dafny verifier.

```
assert i == 0;
```

Now it's easy to see. No matter what value $i$ has, we know that the loop invariant holds: $a * fact(i) == fact(n)$, and we also know that $i == 0$. So it must be that $a * fact(0) == fact(n)$. And fact(0) is *1* (from its mathematical definition). So it must be that $a == fact(n)$. And Dafny confirms it!

```
assert a == fact(n);
```

We thus have the answer we need to return. Dafny verifies that our program satisfies its formal specification. We no longer have to pray. We *know* that our program is right and Dafny confirms our belief.

```
return a;
```

Mathematical logic is to software as the calculus is to physics and engineering. It's not just an academic curiosity. It is a critical intellectual tool, inceasingly used for precise specification and semi-automated reasoning about and verification of real programs.

## 6.7 Case Study: The Fibonacci Function

Similarly, here is a verified imperative implementation of the Fibonacci function. We start by adding a specification in the form of an ensures clause, appealing to our functional program, to tell Dafny what the imperative program must compute.

```
method fibonacci(n: nat) returns (r: nat)
    ensures r == fib(n)
```

Now for the body. First we represent values for the two cases where the result requires no further computation. Initially, *fib0* will store the value of *fib(0)*, namely *0*, and *fib1* will store the value of *fib(1)*, namely *1*.

```
var fib0, fib1 := 0, 1; //parallel assignment
```

Next, we test to see if either of these cases applies, and if so we just return the appropriate result.

```
if (n == 0) { return fib0; }
if (n == 1) { return fib1; }
```

At this point, we know something more about the state of the program than was the case when we started. We can deduce that *n* has to be greater than or equal to *2*. This is because it initially had to be greater than or equal to zero due to its type, and we would already have returned if it were *0* or *1*. It must now be *2* or greater. We can assert this proposition about the state of the program at this point, and Dafny will verify it for us.

```
assert n >= 2;
```

So now we have to deal with the case where $n >= 2$. Our strategy for computing *fib(n)* in this case is, again, to use a while loop. We will establish a loop index *i*. Our design will be based on the idea that at the beginning and end of each loop iteration (we are currently at the beginning), we will have already computed *fib(i)* and that its value is in *fib1*. We've already assigned the value of *fib(0)* to *fib0*, and *fib(1)* to *fib1*, so to set up the desired state, we initialize *i* to be *1*.

```
var i := 1;
```

We can now assert and Dafny can verify a number of conditions that we expect and require to hold. First, *fib1* equals *fib(i)*. To compute the next (*i+1st*) Fibonacci number, we need not only the value of *fib(i)* but also *fib(i-1)*. We will thus also want *fib0* to hold this value at the start and end of each loop iteration. Indeed we do have this state of affairs right now.

```
assert fib1 == fib(i);
assert fib0 == fib(i-1);
```

To compute *fib(n)* for any *n* greater than or equal to *2* will require at least one execution of the loop body. We'll thus set our loop condition to be $i < n$. This ensures that the loop body will run at least once, to compute *fib(2)*, as *i* is *1* and *n* is at least *2*; so the loop condition $i < n$ is *true*, which dictates that the loop body must be evaluated at least once.

Within the loop body we'll compute *fib(i+1)* (we call it *fib2*) by adding together *fib0* and *fib1*; then we increment *i*; then we update *fib0* and *fib1* so that for the *new* value of *i* they hold *fib(i-1)* and *fib(i)*. To do

this we assign the initial value of *fib1* to *fib0* and the value of *fib2* to *fib1*. Think hard so as to confirm for yourself that this sequence of actions re-establishes the loop invariant.

Let's work an example. Suppose $n$ happens to be *2*. The loop body will run, and after the one execution, $i$ will have the value, *2*; *fib1* will have the value of *fib(2)*, and *fib0* will have the value of *fib(1)*. Because $i$ is now *2* and $n$ is *2*, the loop condition will now be false and the loop will terminate. The value of *fib1* will of course be *fib(i)* but now we also have the negation of the loop condition, i.e., $i == n$. So *fib(i)* will be *fib(n)*, which is the result we want and that we return.

We can also informally prove to ourself that this strategy gives us a program that always terminates and returns a value. That is, it does not go into an infinite loop. To see this, note that the value of $i$ is initally less than or equal to $n$, and it increases by only *1* on each time through the loop. The value of $n$ is finite, so the value of $i$ will eventually equal the value of $n$ at which point the loop condition will be falsified and the looping will end.

What Dafny looks for to verify that a given loop terminates is a value that *decreases* each time the loop runs and that is bounded below so that it cannot decrease forever. As $i$ increases in this loop, it can not be the decreasing quantity. What Dafny takes instead is $n - i$. When $i$ is *0* this value is large, and as $i$ gets closer to $n$ it decreases until when $i == n$, the difference is zero, and that is the bound at which the loop terminates.

That's our strategy. Here's the while loop that we have designed. Now for the first time, we see something crucial. In general, Dafny has no idea how many times a loop body will execute. Intead, what it needs to know are properties of the state of the program that hold no matter how many times the loop executes, that, when combined with the fact that the has terminated allows one to conclude that the loop does what it's meant to do. We call such properties *loop invariants*.

```
while (i < n)
    invariant i <= n;
    invariant fib0 == fib(i-1);
    invariant fib1 == fib(i);
{
    var fib2 := fib0 + fib1;
    fib0 := fib1;
    fib1 := fib2;
    i := i + 1;
}
```

The invariants are just the conditions that we required to hold for our design of the loop to work. First, $i$ must never exceed $n$. If it did, the loop would spin off into infinity. Second, to compute the next (the *i+1st)* Fibonacci number we have to have the previous *two* in memory. So *fib0* better hold *fib(i-1)* and *fib1*, *fib(i)*. Note that these conditions do not have to hold at all times *within* the execution of the loop body, where things are being updated, but they do have to hold before before and after each execution.

The body of the loop is just as we described it above. We can use our minds to deduce that if the invariants hold before each loop body runs (and they do), then they will also hold after it runs. We can also see that after the loop terminates, it must be that $i==n$, because we know that it's always true that $i <= n$ and the loop condition must now be false, which is to say that $i$ can no longer be strictly less than $n$, so $i$ must now equal $n$. Logic says so.

What is amazing is that we can write these assertions in Dafny if we wish to, and Dafny will verify that they are true statements about the state of the program after the loop has run. We have *proved* (or rather Dafny has proved) that our loop always terminates with the right answer. We have a formal proof of *total correctness* for this program.

```
assert i <= n;       // invariant
assert !(i < n);     // loop condition is false
assert (i <= n) && !(i < n) ==> (i == n);
assert i == n;       // deductive conclusion
```

```
assert fib1 == fib(i); // invariant
assert fib1 == fib(i) && (i==n) ==> fib1 == fib(n);
assert fib1 == fib(n);
return fib1;
```

## 6.8 What is Dafny, Again?

Dafny is a cutting-edge software language and toolset for verification of imperative code. It was developed at Microsoft Research—one of the top computer science research labs in the world. We are exploring Dafny and the ideas underlying it in the first part of this course to give a sense of why it's vital for a computer scientist today to have a substantial understanding of logic and proofs along with the ability to *code*.

Tools such as TLA+, Dafny, and others of this variety give us a way both to express formal specifications and imperative code in a unified way (albeit in different sub-languages), and to have some automated checking done in an attempt to verify that code satisfies its spec.

We say *attempt* here, because in general verifying the consistency of code and a specification is a literally unsolvable problem. In cases that arise in practice, much can often be done. It's not always easy, but if one requires ultra-high assurance of the consistency of code and specification, then there is no choice but to employ the kinds of *formal methods* introduced here.

To understand how to use such state-of-the-art software development tools and methods, one must understand not only the language of code, but also the languages of mathematical logic, including set and type theory. One must also understand precisely what it means to *prove* that a program satisfies its specification. And for that, one must develop a sense for propositions and proofs: what they are and how they are built and evaluated.

The well educated computer scientist and the professional software engineer must understand logic and proofs as well as coding, and how they work together to help build *trustworthy* systems. Herein lies the deep relevance of logic and proofs, which might otherwise seem like little more than abstract nonsense and a distraction from the task of learning how to program.

# DAFNY LANGUAGE: TYPES, STATEMENTS, EXPRESSIONS

## 7.1 Built-In Types

Dafny natively supports a range of abstract data types akin to those found in widely used, industrial imperative programming languages and systems, such as Python and Java. In this chapter, we introduce and briefly illustrate the use of these types. The types we discuss are as follow:

- bool, supporting Boolean algebra
- int, nat, and real types, supporting *exact* arithmetic (unlike the numerical types found in most industrial languages
- char, supporting character types
- set<T> and iset<T>, polymorphic set theory for finite and infinite sets
- seq<T> and iseq<T>, polymorphic finite and infinite sequences
- string, supporting character sequences (with addtional helpful functions)
- map<K,V> and imap<K,V>, polymorphic finite and infinite partial functions
- array<T>, polymorphic 1- and multi-dimensional arrays

### 7.1.1 Booleans

The bool abstract data type (ADT) in Dafny provides a bool data type with values, *true* and *false*, along with the Boolean operators that are supported by most programming langauges, along with a few that are not commonly supported.

Here's a method that computes nothing useful and returns no values, but that illustrates the range of Boolean operators in Dafny. We also use the examples in this chapter to discuss a few other aspects of the Dafny language.

```
method BoolOps(a: bool) returns (r: bool)  // bool -> bool
{
    var t: bool := true;    // explicit type declaration
    var f := false;         // type inferred automatically
    var not := !t;          // negation
    var conj := t && f;     // conjunction, short-circuit evaluation
    var disj := t || f;     // disjunction, short-circuit (sc) evaluation
    var impl := t ==> f;    // implication, right associative, sc from left
    var foll := t <== f;    // follows, left associative, sc from right
    var equv := t <==> t;   // iff, bi-implication
    return true;            // returning a Boolean value
}
```

### 7.1.2 Numbers

Methods aren't required to return results. Such methods do their jobs by having side effects, e.g., doing output or writing data into global variables (usually a bad idea). Here's a method that doesn't return a value. It illustrates numerical types, syntax, and operations.

```
method NumOps()
{
    var r1: real := 1000000.0;
    var i1: int := 1000000;
    var i2: int := 1_000_000;   // underscores for readiability
    var i3 := 1_000;            // Dafny can often infer types
    var b1 := (10 < 20) && (20 <= 30); // a boolean expression
    var b2 := 10 < 20 <= 30;    // equivalent, with "chaining"
    var i4: int := (5.5).Floor; // 5
    var i5 := (-2.5).Floor;     // -3
    var i6 := -2.5.Floor;       // -2 = -(2.5.Floor); binding!
}
```

### 7.1.3 Characters

Characters (char) are handled sort of as they are in C, etc.

```
method CharFun()
{
    var c1: char := 'a';
    var c2 := 'b';
    // var i1 := c2 - c1;
    var i1 := (c2 as int) - (c1 as int);    // type conversion
    var b1 := c1 < c2;  // ordering operators defined for char
    var c3 := '\n';     // c-style escape for non-printing chars
    var c4 := '\u265B'; // unicode, hex, "chess king" character
}
```

### 7.1.4 Sets

Polymorphic finite and infinite set types: set<T> and iset<T>. T must support equality. Values of these types are immutable.

```
method SetPlay()
{
    var empty: set<int> := {};
    var primes := {2, 3, 5, 7, 11};
    var squares := {1, 4, 9, 16, 25};
    var b1 := empty < primes;    // strict subset
    var b2 := primes <= primes;   // subset
    var b3: bool := primes !! squares; // disjoint
    var union := primes + squares;
    var intersection := primes * squares;
    var difference := primes - {3, 5};
    var b4 := primes == squares;    // false
    var i1 := | primes |;   // cardinality (5)
```

```
    var b5 := 4 in primes;  // membership (false)
    var b6 := 4 !in primes; // non-membership
}
```

## 7.1.5 Sequences

Polymorphic sequences (often called "lists"): seq<T>. These can be understood as functions from indices
to values. Some of the operations require that T support equality. Values of this type are immutable.

```
method SequencePlay()
{
    var empty_seq: seq<char> := [];
    var hi_seq: seq<char> := ['h', 'i'];
    var b1 := hi_seq == empty_seq; // equality; !=
    var hchar := hi_seq[0];        // indexing
    var b2 := ['h'] < hi_seq;   // proper prefix
    var b3 := hi_seq < hi_seq;  // this is false
    var b4 := hi_seq <= hi_seq; // prefix, true
    var sum := hi_seq + hi_seq; // concatenation
    var len := | hi_seq |;
    var hi_seq := hi_seq[0 := 'H']; // update
    var b5 := 'h' in hi_seq; // member, true, !in
    var s := [0,1,2,3,4,5];
    var s1 := s[0..2];  // subseqence
    var s2 := s[1..];   // "drop" prefix of len 1
    var s3 := s[..2];   // "take" prefix of len 2
    // there's a slice operator, too; later
 }
```

## 7.1.6 Strings

Dafny has strings. Strings are literally just sequences of characters (of type seq<char>), so you can use all
the sequence operations on strings. Dafny provides additional helpful syntax for strings.

```
method StringPlay()
 {
    var s1: string := "Hello CS2102!";
    var s2 := "Hello CS2102!\n";   // return
    var s3 := "\"Hello CS2102!\""; // quotes
 }
```

## 7.1.7 Maps (Partial Functions)

Dafny also supports polymorphic maps, both finite (map<K,V>) and infinite (imap<K,V>). The key type,
K, must support equality (==). In mathematical terms, a map really represents a binary relation, i.e., a set
of <K,V> pairs, which is to say a subset of the product set, K * V, where we view the types K and V as
defining sets of values.

```
method MapPlay()
{
    // A map literal is keyword map + a list of maplets.
    // A maplet is just a single <K,V> pair (or "tuple").
```

```
    // Here's an empty map from strings to ints
    var emptyMap: map<string,int> := map[];

    // Here's non empty map from strings to ints
    // A maplet is "k := v," k and v being of types K and V
    var aMap: map<string,int>  := map["Hi" := 1, "There" := 2];

    // Map domain (key) membership
    var isIn: bool := "There" in aMap; // true
    var isntIn := "Their" !in aMap;    // true

    // Finite map cardinality (number of maplets in a map)
    var card := |aMap|;

    //Map lookup
    var image1 := aMap["There"];
    // var image2 := aMap["Their"]; // error! some kind of magic
    var image2: int;
    if ("Their" in aMap) { image2 := aMap["Their"]; }

    // map update, maplet override and maplet addition
    aMap := aMap["There" := 3];
    aMap := aMap["Their" := 10];
}
```

### 7.1.8 Arrays

Dafny supports arrays. Here's we'll see simple 1-d arrays.

```
method ArrayPlay()
{
    var a := new int[10]; // in general: a: array<T> := new T[n];
    var a' := new int[10];   // type inference naturally works here
    var i1 := a.Length;      // Immutable "Length" member holds length of array
    a[3] := 3;          // array update
    var i2 := a[3];          // array access
    var seq1 := a[3..8];    // take first 8, drop first 3, return as sequence
    var b := 3 in seq1;     // true! (see sequence operations)
    var seq2 := a[..8];     // take first 8, return rest as sequence
    var seq3 := a[3..];     // drop first 3, return rest as sequence
    var seq4 := a[..];      // return entire array as a sequence
}
```

Arrays, objects (class instances), and traits (to be discussed) are of "reference" types, which is to say, values of these types are stored on the heap. Values of other types, including sets and sequences, are of "value types," which is to say values of these types are stored on the stack; and they're thus always treated as "local" variables. They are passed by value, not reference, when passed as arguments to functions and methods. Value types include the basic scalar types (bool, char, nat, int, real), built-in collection types (set, multiset, seq, string, map, imap), tuple, inductive, and co-inductive types (to be discussed). Reference type values are allocated dynamically on the heap, are passed by reference, and therefore can be "side effected" (mofified) by methods to which they are passed.

## 7.2 Statements

### 7.2.1 Block

In Dafny, you can make one bigger command from a sequence of smaller ones by enclosing the sequence in braces. You typically use this only for the bodies of loops and the parts of conditionals.

```
{
    print "Block: Command1\n";
    print "Block: Command2\n";
}
```

### 7.2.2 Break

The break command is for prematurely breaking out of loops.

```
var i := 5;
while (i > 0)
{
    if (i == 3)
    {
        break;
    }
    i := i - 1;
}
print "Break: Broke when i was ", i, "\n";
```

### 7.2.3 Update (Assignment)

There are several forms of the update command. The first is the usual assignment that you see in many languages. The second is "multiple assignment", where you can assign several values to several variables at once. The final version is not so familar. It *chooses* a value that satisfies some property and assigns it to a variable.

```
var x := 3;         // typical assignment
var y := 4;         // typical assignment
print "Update: before swap, x and y are ", x, ", ", y, "\n";
x, y := y, x;       // one-line swap using multiple assignment
print "Update: after swap, x and y are ", x, ", ", y, "\n";
var s: set<int> := { 1, 2, 3 }; // typical: assign set value to s
var c :| c in s;    // update c to a value such that c is in s
print "Update: Dafny chose this value from the set: ", c, "\n";
```

### 7.2.4 Var (variable declaration)

A variable declaration stsatement is used to declare one or more local variables in a method or function. The type of each local variable must be given unless the variable is given an initial value in which case the type will be inferred. If initial values are given, the number of values must match the number of variables declared. Note that the type of each variable must be given individually. This "var x, y : int;" does not declare both x and y to be of type int. Rather it will give an error explaining that the type of x is underspecified.

```
var l: seq<int> := [1, 2, 3]; // explicit type (sequence of its)
var l'          := [1, 2, 3]; // Dafny infers type from [1, 2, 3]
```

## 7.2.5 If (conditional)

There are several forms of the if statement in Dafny. The first is "if (Boolean) block-statement." The second is "if (Boolean) block-statement else block-statement" A block is a sequence of commands enclosed by braces (see above).

In addition, there is a multi-way if statement similar to a case statement in C or C++. The conditions for the cases are evaluated in an unspecified order. The first to match results in evaluation of the corresponding command. If no case matches the overall if command does nothing.

```
if (0==0) { print "If: zero is zero\n"; }   // if (bool) {block}
if (0==1)
    { print "If: oops!\n"; }
else
    { print "If: oh good, 0 != 1\n"; }

var q := 1;
if {
    case q == 0 => print "Case: q is 0\n";
    case q == 1 => print "Case: q is 1\n";
    case q == 2 => print "Case: q is 2\n";
}
```

## 7.2.6 While (iteration)

While statements come in two forms. The first is a typical Python-like statement "while (Boolean) block-command". The second involves the use of a case-like construct instead of a single Boolean expression to control the loop. This form is typically used when a loop has to either run up or down depending on the initial value of the index. An example of the first form is given above, for the BREAK statement. Here is an example of the second form.

```
var r: int;
while
    decreases if 0 <= r then r else -r;
{
    case r < 0 => { r := r + 1; }
    case 0 < r => { r := r - 1; }
}
```

Dafny insists on proving that all while loops and all recursive functions actually terminate – do not loop forever. Proving such properties is (infinitely) hard in general. Dafny often makes good guesses as to how to do it, in which case one need do nothing more. In many other cases, however, Dafny needs some help. For this, one writes "loop specifications." These include clauses called "decreases", "invariant", and "modifies", which are written after the while and before the left brace of the loop body. We discuss these separately, but in the meantime, here are a few examples.

```
// a loop that counts down from 5, terminating when i==0.
i := 5;                 // already declared as int above
while 0 < i
    invariant 0 <= i    // i always >= 0 before and after loop
    decreases i         // decreasing value of i bounds the loop
```

```
{
    i := i - 1;
}

// this loop counts *up* from i=0 ending with i==5
// notice that what decreases is difference between i and n
var n := 5;
i := 0;
while i < n
    invariant 0 <= i <= n
    decreases n - i
{
    i := i + 1;
}
```

### 7.2.7 Assert (assert a proposition about the state of the program)

Assert statements are used to express logical proposition that are expected to be true. Dafny will attempt to prove that the assertion is true and give an error if not. Once it has proved the assertion it can then use its truth to aid in following deductions. Thus if Dafny is having a difficult time verifying a method the user may help by inserting assertions that Dafny can prove, and whose true may aid in the larger verification effort. (From reference manual.)

```
assert i == 5;      // true because of preceding loop
assert !(i == 4);   // similarly true
// assert i == 4;   // uncomment to see static assertion failure
```

### 7.2.8 Print (produce output on console)

From reference manual: The print statement is used to print the values of a comma-separated list of expressions to the console. The generated C# code uses the System.Object.ToString() method to convert the values to printable strings. The expressions may of course include strings that are used for captions. There is no implicit new line added, so to get a new line you should include "n" as part of one of the expressions. Dafny automatically creates overrides for the ToString() method for Dafny data types.

```
print "Print: The set is ", { 1, 2, 3}, "\n"; // print the set
```

### 7.2.9 Return

From the reference manual: A return statement can only be used in a method. It terminates the execution of the method. To return a value from a method, the value is assigned to one of the named return values before a return statement. The return values act very much like local variables, and can be assigned to more than once. Return statements are used when one wants to return before reaching the end of the body block of the method. Return statements can be just the return keyword (where the current value of the out parameters are used), or they can take a list of values to return. If a list is given the number of values given must be the same as the number of named return values.

To return a value from a method, assign to the return parameter and then either use an explicit return statement or just let the method complete.

```
method ReturnExample() returns (retval: int)
{
    retval := 10;
    // implicit return here
}
```

Methods can return multiple values.

```
method ReturnExample2() returns (x: int, y:int)
{
    x := 10;
    y := 20;
}
```

The return keyword can be used to return immediatey

```
method ReturnExample3() returns (x: int)
{
    x := 5;      // don't "var" decare return variable
    return;      // return immediately
    x := 6;      // never gets executed
    assert 0 == 1; // can't be reached to never gets checked!
}
```

## 7.3 Expressions

### 7.3.1 Literals Expressions

A literal expression is a boolean literal (true or false), a null object reference (null), an unsigned integer (e.g., 3) or real (e.g., 3.0) literal, a character (e.g., 'a') or string literal (e.g., "abc"), or "this" which denote the current object in the context of an instance method or function. We have not yet seen objects or talked about instance methods or functions.

### 7.3.2 If (Conditional) Expressions

If expressions first evaluate a Boolean expression and then evaluate one of the two following expressions, the first if the Boolean expression was true, otherwise the second one. Notice in this example that an IF *expression* is used on the right side of an update/assignment statement. There is also an if *statement*.

```
var x := 11;
var h := if x != 0 then (10 / x) else 1;    // if expression
assert h == 0;
if (h == 0) {x := 3; } else { x := 0; }     // if statement
assert x == 3;
```

### 7.3.3 Conjunction and Disjunction Expressions

Conjunction and disjuction are associative. This means that no matter what b1, b2, and b3 are, (b1 && b2) && b3 is equal to (b1 && (b2 && b3)), The same property holds for ||.

These operators are also *short circuiting*. What this means is that their second argument is evaluated only if evaluating the first does not by itself determine the value of the expression.

Here's an example where short circuit evaluation matters. It is what prevents the evaluation of an undefined expressions after the && operator.

```
var a: array<int> := null;
var b1: bool := (a != null) && (a[0]==1);
```

Here short circuit evaluation protects against evaluation of a[0] when a is null. Rather than evaluating both expressions, reducing them both to Boolean values, and then applying a Boolean *and* function, instead the right hand expressions is evaluated "lazily", i.e., only of the one on the left doesn't by itself determine what the result should be. In this case, because the left hand expression is false, the whole expression must be false, so the right side not only doesn't have to be evaluated; it also *won't* be evaluated.

### 7.3.4 Sequence, Set, Multiset, and Map Expressions

Values of these types can be written using so-called *display* expressions. Sequences are written as lists of values within square brackets; sets, within braces; and multisets using "multiset" followed by a list of values within braces.

```
var aSeq: seq<int> := [1, 2, 3];
var aVal := aSeq[1];     // get the value at index 1
assert aVal == 2;        // don't forget about zero base indexing

var aSet: set<int> := { 1, 2, 3};   // sets are unordered
assert { 1, 2, 3 } == { 3, 1, 2};   // set equality ignores order
assert [ 1, 2, 3 ] != [ 3, 1, 2];   // sequence equality doesn't

var mSet := multiset{1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3};
assert (3 in mSet) == true;         // in-membership is Boolean
assert mSet[3] == 3;                // [] counts occurrences
assert mSet[4] == 0;

var sqr := map [0 := 0, 1 := 1, 2 := 4, 3 := 9, 4 := 16];
assert |sqr| == 5;
assert sqr[2] == 4;
```

### 7.3.5 Relational Expressions

Relation expressions, such as less than, have a relational operator that compares two or more terms and returns a Boolean result. The ==, !=, <, >, <=, and >= operators are examples. These operators are also "chaining". That means one can write expressions such as $0 <= x < n$, and what this means is $0 <= x$ && $x < n$.

The in and !in relational operators apply to collection types. They compute membership or non-membership respectively.

The !! operator computes disjointness of sets and multisets. Two such collections are said to be disjoint if they have no elements in common. Here are a few examples of relational expressions involving collections (all given within assert statements).

```
assert 3 in { 1, 2, 3 };                      // set member
assert 4 !in { 1, 2, 3 };                     // non-member
assert "foo" in ["foo", "bar", "bar"];        // seq member
assert "foo" in { "foo", "bar"};              // set member
assert { "foo", "bar" } !! { "baz", "bif"};   // disjoint
```

```
assert { "foo", "bar" } < { "foo", "bar", "baz" };  // subset
assert { "foo", "bar" } == { "foo", "bar" };         // set equals
```

### 7.3.6 Array Allocation Expressions

Arrays in Dafny are *reference values*. That is, the value of an array variable is a *reference* to an address in the *heap* part of memory, or it is *null*. To get at the data in an array, one *dereferences* the array variable, using the *subscripting* operator. The array variable must not be null in this case. It must reference a chunk of memory that has been allocated for the array values, in the *heap* part of memory.

To allocate memory for a new array for n elements of type T one uses an expression like this: a: array<T> := new T[n]. The type of *a* here is "an array of elements of type *T*," and the size of the allocated memory chunk is big enough to hold *n* values of this type.

Multi-dimensional arrays (matrices) are also supported. The types of these arrays are "arrayn<T>, where "n" is the number of dimensions and T is the type of the elements. All elements of an array or matrix must be of the same type.

```
a := new int[10];         // type of a already declared above
var m: array2<int> := new int[10, 10];
a[0] := 1;                // indexing into 1-d array
m[0,0] := 1;              // indexing into multi-dimensional array
```

### 7.3.7 Old Expressions

An old expression is used in postconditions. old(e) evaluates to the value expression e had on entry to the current method. Here's an example showing the use of the old expression. This method increments (adds one **to__** the first element of an array. The specification part of the method *ensures* that the method body has this effect by explaining that the new value of a[0] must be the original (the "old") value plus one. The *requires* (preconditions) statements are needed to ensure that the array is not null and not zero length. The modifies command explains that the method body is allowed to change the value of a.

```
method incr(a: array<nat>) returns (r: array<nat>)
requires a != null;
requires a.Length > 0;
modifies a;
ensures a[0] == old(a[0]) + 1;
{
    a[0] := a[0] + 1;
    return a;
}
```

### 7.3.8 Cardinality Expressions

For a collection expression c, |c| is the cardinality of c. For a set or sequence the cardinality is the number of elements. For a multiset the cardinality is the sum of the multiplicities of the elements. For a map the cardinality is the cardinality of the domain of the map. Cardinality is not defined for infinite maps.

```
var c1 := | [1, 2, 3] |;          // cardinality of sequence
assert c1 == 3;
var c2 := | { 1, 2, 3 } |;        // cardinality of a set
assert c2 == 3;
```

```
var c3 := | map[ 0 := 0, 1 := 1, 2 := 4, 3 := 9] |; // of a map
assert c3 == 4;
assert | multiset{ 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 4 } | == 10; // multiset
```

### 7.3.9 Let Expressions

A let expression allows binding of intermediate values to identifiers for use in an expression. The start of the let expression is signaled by the var keyword. They look like local variable declarations except the scope of the variable only extends to following expression. (Adapted from RefMan.)

Here's an example (see the following code).

First x+x is computed and bound to sum, the result of the overall expression on the right hand side of the update/assignment statement is then the value of "sum * sum" given this binding. The binding does not persist past the evaluation of the "let" expression. The expression is called a "let" expression because in many other languages, you'd use a let keyword to write this: let sum = x + x in sum * sum. Dafny just uses a slightly different syntax.

```
assert x == 3;                  // from code above
var sumsquared := (var sum := x + x; sum * sum);  // let example
assert sumsquared == 36;      // because of the let expression
```

# SET THEORY

Modern mathematics is largely founded on set theory: in particular, on what is called *Zermelo-Fraenkel set theory with the axiom of Choice*, or *ZFC*. Every concept you have ever learned in mathematics can, in principle, be reduced to expresions involving sets. For example, every natural number can be represented as a set: zero as the *empty set, {}*; one as the set containing the empty set, *{{}}*; two as the set that contains that set, *{{{}}}*; ad infinitum.

Set theory includes the treatment of sets, including the special cases of relations (sets of tuples), functions (*single-valued* relations), sequences (functions from natural numbers to elements), and other such concepts. ZFC is a widely accepted *formal foundation* for modern mathematics: a set of axioms that describe properties of sets, from which all the rest of mathematics can be deduced.

## 8.1 Naive Set Theory

So what is a set? A *naive* definition (which will actually be good enough for our purposes and for most of practical computer science) is that a set is just an unordered collection of elements. In principle, these elements are themselves reducible to sets but we don't need to think in such reductionist terms. We can think about a set of natural numbers, for example, without having to think of each number as itself being some weird kind of set.

In practice, we just think sets as unordered collections of elements of some kind, where any given element is either *in* or *not in* any given set. An object can be a member of many different sets, but can only by in any give set zero or one times. Membership is binary. So, for example, when we combine (take the *union* of) two sets, each of which contains some common element, the resulting combined set will have that element as a member, but it won't have it twice.

This chapter introduces *naive*, which is to say *intuitive and practical*, set theory. It does not cover *axiomatic* set theory, in which every concept is ultimately reduced to a set of logical axioms that define what precisely it means to be a set and what operations can be use to manipulate sets.

## 8.2 Overly Naive Set Theory

Before we go on, however, we review a bit of history to understand that an overly naive view of sets can lead to logical contradictions that make such a theory useless as a foundation for mathematics.

One of the founders of modern logic, Gotlob Frege, had as his central aim to establish logical foundations for all of mathematics: to show that everything could be reduced to a set of axioms, or propositions accepted without question, from which all other mathematical truths could be deduced. The concept of a set was central to his effort. His logic therefore allowed one to define sets as collections of elements that satisfy given propositions, and to talk about whether any given element is in a particular set of not. Frege's notion of sets, in turn, traced back to the work of Georg Cantor.

But then, boom! In 1903, the British analytical philosopher, Bertrand Russell, published a paper presenting a terrible paradox in Frege's conception. Russell showed that a logic involving naive set theory would be *inconsistent* (self-contradicting) and there useless as a foundation for mathematics.

To see the problem, one consider the set, $S$, of all sets that do not contain themselves. In *set comprehension* notation, we would write this set as $S = \{a : set | a \notin a\}$. That is, $S$ is the set of elements, $a$, each a set, such that $a$ is not a member of itself.

Now ask the decisive question: Does $S$ contain itself?

Let's adopt a notation, *C(S)*, to represent the proposition that $S$ contains itself. Now suppose that *C(S)* is true, i.e., that $S$ does contain itself. In this case, $S$, being a set that contains itself, cannot be a member of $S$, because we just defined $S$ to be the set of sets that do *not* contain themselves. So, the assumption that $S$ contains itself leads to the conclusion that $S$ does not contain itself. In logical terms, $C(S) \to \neg C(S)$. This is a contradiction and thus a logical impossibility.

Now suppose $S$ does not contain itself: $\neg C(S)$.. Being such a set, and given that $S$ is the set of sets that do not contain themselves, it must now be in $S$. So $\neg C(S) \to C(S)$. The assumption that it does *not* contain itself leads right back to the conclusion that it *does* contain itself. Either the set does or does not contain itself, but assuming either case leads to a contradictory conclusion. All is lost!

That such an internal self-contradiction can arise in such a simple way (or at all) is a complete disaster for any logic. The whole point of a logic is that it gives one a way to reason that is sound, which means that from true premises one can never reach a contradictory conclusion. If something that is impossible can be proved to be true in a given theory, then anything at all can be proved to be true, and the whole notion of truth just collapses into meaninglessness. As soon as Frege saw Russell's Paradox, he knew that that was *game over* for his profound attempt to base mathematics on a logic grounded in his (Cantor's) naive notion of sets.

Two solutions were eventually devised. Russell introduced a notion of *types*, as opposed to sets, per se, as a foundation for mathematics. The basic idea is that one can have elements of a certain *type*; then sets of elements of that type, forming a new type; then sets of sets elements of that type, forming yet another type; but one cannot even talk about a set containing (or not containing) itself, because sets can only contain elements of types lower in the type hierarchy.

The concept of types developed by Russell lead indirectly to modern type theory, which remains an area of very active exploration in both computer science and pure mathematics. Type theory is being explored as an alternative foundation for mathematics, and is at the very heart of a great deal of work going on in the areas of programming language design and formal software specification and verification.

On the other hand, Zermelo repaired the paradox by adjusting some of the axioms of set theory, to arrive at the starting point of what has become ZFC. When we work in set theory today, whether with a *naive* perspective or not, we are usually working in a set theory the logical basic of which is ZFC.

## 8.3 Sets

For our purposes, the *naive* notion of sets will be good enough. We will take a *set* to be an unordered finite or infinite collection of *elements*. An element is either *in* or *not in* a set, and can be in a set at most once. In this chapter, we will not encounter any of the bizarre issues that Russell and others had to consider at the start of the 20th century.

What we will find is that set-theory is a powerful intellectual tool for the computer scientist and software engineer. It's at the heart of program specification and verification, algorithm design and analysis, theory of computing, among other areas in computer science. Moreover, Dafny makes set theory fun by making it runnable. The logic of Dafny, for writing assertions, pre- and post-conditions, and invariants *is* set theory, a first-order predicate logic with set and set operators built in.

## 8.4 Set Theory Notations

### 8.4.1 Display notation

In everyday mathematical writing, and in Dafny, we denote small sets by listing the elements of the set within curly brace. If $S$ is the set containing the numbers, one, two, and three, for example, we can write $S$ as $\{1, 2, 3\}$.

In Dafny, we would write almost the same thing.

```
var S:set<int> := { 1, 2, 3 };
```

This code introduces the variable, $S$, declares that its type is *finite set of integer* (*iset<T>* being the type of *infinite* sets of elements of tyep $T$), and assigns to $S$ the set value, $\{1, 2, 3\}$. Because the value on the right side of the assignment operator, is evidently a set of integers, Dafny will infer the type of $S$, and the explicit type declaration can therefore be omitted.

```
var S := { 1, 2, 3 };
```

When a set is finite but too large to write down easily as a list of elements, but when it has a regular structure, mathematicians often denote such a set using an elipsis. For example, a set, $S$, of even natural numbers from zero to one hundred could be written like this: $S = \{0, 2, 4, \ldots, 100\}$. This expression is a kind of quasi-formal mathematics. It's mostly formal but leaves details that an educated person should be able to infer to the human reader.

It is not (currently) possible to write such expressions in Dafny. Dafny does not try to fill in missing details in specifications. A system that does do such a thing might make a good research project. On the other hand, ordinary mathematical writing as well as Dafny do have ways to precisely specify sets, including even infinite sets, in very concise ways, using what is called *set comprehension* or *set builder* notation.

### 8.4.2 Set comprehension notation

Take the example of the set, $T$, of even numbers from zero to fifty, inclusive. We can denote this set precisely in mathematical writing as $T = \{n : \mathbb{Z} \mid 0 <= n <= 50 \land n \bmod 2 = 0\}$. Let's pull this expression apart.

The set expression, to the right of the first equals sign, can be read in three parts. The vertical bar in the middle is pronounced, *such that*. To the left of the bar is an expression identifying the larger set from which the elements of the set being defined are drawn: here we are drawing values from the set of all integers. A name, here $n$, is given to an arbitrary element of this source set. This name is then used in writing a predicate that that defines which elements of the source set are included in the set being defined. That expression is written to the right of the vertical bar. Here the predicate is that $n$ is greater than or equal to zero, less than or equal to fifty, and even (in that the remainder is zero when $n$ is divided by *2*).

The overall set comprehension expression is thus read as, $T$ is the set of integers, $n$, such that $n$ is greater than or equal to zero, less than or equal to 50, and evenly divisible by *2*. A more fluent reading would simply be "$T$ is the set of even integers between zero and fifty, inclusive."

Dafny supports set comprehension notations. This same set would be written as follows:

```
set t: int | 0 <= t <= 50 && t % 2 == 0
```

Note that this expression evaluates to a value of type "set of int*. You could assign this value to a variable in a Dafny method by writing

```
T := set t: int | 0 <= t <= 50 && t % 2 == 0;
```

You can think of this expression as either pure mathematics, or as a program that *loops* over the integers, selects those that make the given predicate evaluate to *true*, and includes all and only the selected elements in the set being defined. That not how it actually works (it's not possible to actually loop over all integers), but it is as if this is what's happening "under the hood."

There are other way to define the same set using set comprehension notation. For example, we can define the set as the set of values of the expression *2\*n*, where $n$ is in the range zero to twentyfive. Where it's readily inferred, mathematicians will usually also leave out explicit type information. Here's what it looks like: $T = \{2*n | 0 <= n <= 25\}$.

In this expression one infers, based on one's mathematical intuition, that $n$ is intended ranges over the integers or natural numbers. The predicate on the right selects the values from zero to twentyfive. The expression before the bar then *builds* the values in the set that is being defined by evaluating the given expression for each value of $n$ selected from the source set. Set comprehension notation is sometimes called *set builder* notation, and here you can see why.

As an aside, we note that practicing mathematicians are usually a bit imprecise in writing math, assuming that the reader will be able to fill in missing details. Of course, such assumptions are sometimes wrong. This course and book show that it is possible, using tools like Dafny and Lean, not only to be formally precise, with tools checking that you haven't made mistakes.

Dafny supports set builder notation. To express our set in Dafny we could also write this expression:

```
set t: int | 0 <= t <= 25 :: 2 * t
```

To read this code, you could say, "the set of values of type integer obtained by first allowing $t$ to range over values from zero to twentyfive any by then multiplying each such $t$ value by 2."

The source set need not be a built-in type. Given that $T$ is the set of even numbers from zero to fifty, we can define the subset of $T$ of elements that are less than *25* using a set comprehension. In pure mathematical writing, we could write $S = \{t | t \in T \wedge t < 25\}$. That is, $S$ is the set of elements that are in $T$ (the set of even numbers from zero to fifty) and that are less than *25*. Here is a Dafny command assigning this set to the variable, $S$.

```
var S := set s | s in T && s < 25;
```

This code defines $S$ to be the set of integers, $s$ (Dafny infers that the type of $s$ is *int*) such that $s$ is in the set $T$ (that we just defined) and $s$ is also less than *25*. $S$ is thus assigned the set of even integers from zero to twentyfour.

As a final example, let's suppose that we want to define the set of all ordered pairs whose first elements are from $S$ and whose second elements are from *T*, as we've defined them here. For example, the pair *(24,76)* would be in this set, but not *(76,24)*. In ordinary mathematical writing, we'd write a set builder expression like this $\{(s,t) | s \in S \wedge t \in T\}$. This is read, "the set of ordered pairs, *(s,t)*, where $s$ is any element of $S$ and $t$ is any element of *T*.

In Danfy, this would be written using set builder notation, like this:

```
var Q := set s, t | s in S && t in T :: (s, t);
```

This code assigns to the new variable, $Q$, a set formed by taking elements, $s$ and $t$,, such that $s$ is in $S$ and $t$ is in $T$, and forming the elements of the new set as tuples, *(s, t)*.

### 8.4.3 The Empty Set

The empty set (of elements of some type, $A$) is the set containing no elements. In mathematical writing and in Dafny, this set is denoted as *{}*.

## 8.5 Set Operations

### 8.5.1 Cardinality

By the cardinality of a set, $S$, we mean the number of elements in S. When $S$ is finite, the cardinality of $S$ is a natural number. The cardinarily of the empty set is zero, for example, because it has no (zero) elements. In ordinary mathematics, if $S$ is a finite set, then its cardinality is denoted as $|S|$. With $S$ defined as in the preceding section, the cardinality of $S$ is *13*, in that there are thirteen even numbers between *0* and *25*.

The Dafny notation for set cardinality is just the same. The following code will print the cardinality of $S$, for example.

```
print |S|;
```

If a set is infinite in size, as for example is the set of natural numbers, the cardinality of the set is not a natural number. One has entered the realm of *transfinite numbers*. We discuss transfinite numbers later in this course. In Dafny, as you might expect, the cardinality operator is not defined for infinite sets (of type *iset<T>*).

### 8.5.2 Equality

Two sets, $S$ and $T$ are said to be *equal* if and only if they contain exactly the same elements. That is, $S = T \iff \forall x, x \in S \iff x \in T$. In mathematical English, you would say, "A set $S$ is equal to a set $T$ if and only if for every possible value, $x$, $x$ is in S if and only if it is in $T$.

In Dafny, you could define a polymorphic set equality operator like this:

```
predicate set_eq<A(!new)>(S: set<A>, T: set<A>)
{
    forall x :: x in S <==> x in T
}
```

This Dafny code defines a predicate, which is to say a proposition with two parameters, S and T, each sets containing elements of type A, where A is any Dafny type. It looks like the mathematical definition except for the annotation, (!new), after the declaration of the type parameter.

All that said, we don't need to define our own set equality operator, as the one that is built into Dafny will do just fine. The proposition that Dafny sets, $S$ and $T$, are equal would be written, $S == T$. This expression uses Dafny's Boolean operator, $==$, for comparing values for equality. The expression, $S == T$ evalutes to true if and only if $S$ and $T$ are equal, as defined here.

### 8.5.3 Subset

A set, $T$, can be said to be a subset of a set $S$ if and only if every element in $S$ is also in $T$. In this case, mathematicians write $S \subseteq T$. The mathematical definition is that $S \subseteq T \iff \forall s \in S, s \in T$. That is, $S$ is a subset of $T$ if and only if every element in $S$ is also in $T$. An equivalent way to write it is, $S \subseteq T \iff \forall s, s \in S \to s \in T$. That is, $S$ is a subset of $T$ if for every value, $s$, if $s$ is in $S$ then $s$ is also in $T$, Note that this does not say that every element of S is in T, but only that *if* an element is in $S$ then it is also in $T$.

Here's how this definition would be written in Dafny.

```
predicate set_subseteq<A(!new)>(S: set<A>, T: set<A>)
{
    forall s :: s in S ==> s in T
}
```

Dafny provides a built-in subset operator, $<=$. It looks like the usual "less than or equals" operator, but when applied to sets, as in the expression, $S <= T$, it returns true if and only if $S$ is a subset of $T$.

### 8.5.4 Proper Subset

A set $S$, is said to be a *proper* subset of $T$, if $S$ is a subset of $T$ but there is some element in $T$ that is not in $S$. In our example, $S$, the set of even natural numbers less than *25*, is a proper subset of $T$, the set of even natural numbers less than or equal to *100*.

In the language of mathematical logic, we would write, $S \subset T$ or, to emphasize the non-equality of $S$ and $T$, as, $S \subsetneq T$.

To futher clarify, $S$ is said to be a *proper* subset of $T$ if $S$ is a subset of $T$ and there is at least one element in $T$ that is not in $S$. In mathematical language, $S \subset T \iff \forall s \in S, s \in T \land \exists t \in T, t \notin S$. The backwards $E$, *exists*, is the *existential quantifier* in predicate logic, and is read as, and means, *there exists.* You this pronounce this sentence as, "$S$ is a proper subset of $T$ if and only if every element in $S$ is in $T$ and there *exists* some element in $T$ that is not in $S$.

```
predicate set_subset<A(!new)>(S: set<A>, T: set<A>)
{
    forall s :: s in S ==> s in T && (exists t :: t in T && t !in S)
}
```

The parentheses in around the exists clause aren't needed but are included to make it clear how to read, or *parse*, the expression.

We don't really have to define our own proper subset operator in Dafny, as Dafny provides one that is built-in. The Dafny expression, $S < T$ returns true if and only if $S$ is a proper subset of $T$.

Here are some examples of code in Dafny. They assume that The first two of the following assertions are thus both true in Dafny, but the third is not. That said, limitations in the Dafny verifier make it hard for Dafny to see the truth of such assertions without help. We will not discuss how to provide such help at this point.

```
assert S < T;
assert S <= T;
assert T <= S;
```

We note every set is a subset, but not a proper subset, of itself. It's also the case that the empty set is a subset of every set, in that *all* elements in the empty set are in any other set, because there are none. In logic-speak, we'd say *a universally quantified proposition over an empty set is trivially true.*

If we reverse the operator, we get the notion of supersets and proper supersets. If $T$ is a subset of $S$, then $S$ is a superset of $T$, written, $S \supseteq T$. If $T$ is a proper subset of $S$ then $S$ is a proper superset of $T$, written $S \supset T$. In Dafny, the greater than and greater than or equals operator are used to denote proper superset and superset relationships between sets. So, for example, $S >= T$ is the assertion that $S$ is a superset of $T$. Note that every set is a superset of itself, but never a proper superset of itself, and every set is a superset of the empty set.

### 8.5.5 Intersection

The intersection of two sets, $S$ and $T$, written as $S \cap T$, is the set of all elements that are in both sets. Mathematically speaking, $S \cap T = \{e \mid e \in S \wedge e \in T\}$.

In Dafny, we could define our own polymorphic set intersection function in only a superficially different way as follows:

```
function intersection<A>(S: set<A>, T: set<A>): set<A>
{
    set e | e in S && e in T
}
```

Once again, we don't have to write such code. Dafny's built-in `*` operator applied to sets denotes set intersection. The intersection of $S$ and $T$ is written $S * T$. For example, the command $Q := S * T$ assigns the intersection of $S$ and $T$ as the value of $Q$. Try it yourself.

### 8.5.6 Union

The union of two sets, $S$ and $T$, written as $S \cup T$, is the set of elements that are in either (or both) $S$ and $T$. That is, $S \cup T = \{e \mid e \in S \vee e \in T\}$.

In Dafny, we would hope to write this as follows:

```
 function union<A>(S: set<A>, T: set<A>): set<A>
{
    set e | e in S || e in T
}
```

Unfortunately, Dafny rejects this definition. It's not that the definition is wrong, but rather that the implementation of Dafny is incomplete as of the writing of this chapter. As a result, Dafny complains that it cannot determine that the union of $S$ and $T$ is finite, even though it clearly is, as $S$ and $T$ themselves are, and a union of finite sets if clearly also finite. We will have to wait for certain enhancements to Dafny to be able to write this code.

Fortunately, once again, of course, Dafny provides a built-in operator for computing set unions, namely $+$. The union of sets, $S$ and $T$, is written $S + T$. For example, the command $V := S + T$ assigns the union of $S$ and $T$ as the new value of $V$. Try it!

### 8.5.7 Difference

The difference of sets $T$ and $S$, written $T \setminus S$, is the set of elements in $T$ that are not in $S$. Thus, $T \setminus S = \{e \mid e \in T \wedge e \notin S)$.

We could write a Dafny function to specify this operation as follows:

```
function set_minus<A>(T: set<A>, S: set<A>): set<A>
 {
    set e | e in T && e !in S
}
```

Again, we don't have to. In Dafny, the minus sign is used to denote set difference, as in the expression, $T$ - $S$. Operators in Dafny can be applied to sets to make up more complex expressions. So, for example, $|T\text{-}S|$ denotes the cardinality of $T$-$S$. Try evaluating this expression with $T$ and $S$ as defined in the previous section.

### 8.5.8 Product Set

The product set, $S \times T$, of two sets, $S$ and T*, is defined ot be set of all the ordered pairs, *(s,t)*, that can be formed by taking any element, *s*, from $S$, and any element, *t*, from $T$. That is, $S \times T = \{(s,t)|s \in S \wedge t \in T\}$.

There actually is no built in product set operator, in Dafny. The good news is that you now know how to express the concept using a set comprehension.

The product set of two sets can be expressed using set comprehension notation: *set s, t | s in S && t in T :: (s,t)*. The keyword, *set*, is followed by the names of the variables that will be used to form the set comprehension expression, followed by a colon, followed by an assertion that selects the values of *s* and *t* that will be included in the result, followed by a double colon, and then, the expression that builds the values of the set being defined: here an ordered pair, or tuple, expression.

We note that the the cardinality of a product set is the product of the cardinalities of the individual sets. Think about why this must be true.

Exercise: Write and test a polymorphic function method in Dafny, called *set_product<A,B>*, that, when given any two sets, $S$ and $T$, of elements of types $A$ and $B$, respectively, returns the product set of $S$ and $T$. Note that the type of elements in the resulting set is the *tuple type, (A, B)*.

## 8.6 Tuples

A tuple is an ordered collection of elements. The type of elements in a tuple need not all be be the same. The number of elements in a tuple is called its *arity*. Ordered pairs are tuples of arity, *2*, for example. A tuple of arity *3* can be called a (an ordered) *triple*. A tuple of a larger arity, *n*, is called an *n-tuple*. The tuple, *(7, X, "house", square_func)*, for example, is a *4-tuple*.

As is evident in this example, the elements of a tuple are in general not of the same type, or drawn from the same sets. Here, the first element is an integer; the second, a variable;, the third, a string; and last, a function.

An *n*-tuples should be understood as values taken from a product of *n* sets. If $S$ and $T$ are our sets of even numbers between zero and one hundred, and zero and twenty four, for example, then the ordered pair, *(60,24)* is an element of the product set $S \times T$. The preceding *4*-tuple would have come from a product of four sets: one of integers, one of variables, one of strings, and one of functions.

The *type* of a tuple is the tuple of the types of its elements. In mathematical writing, we'd say that the tuple, *(-3,4)* is al element of the set $\mathbb{Z} \times \mathbb{Z}$, and if asked about its type, most mathematicians would say *pair of integers*. In Dafny, where types are more explicit than they usually are in quasi-formal mathematical discourse, the type of this tuple is *(int, int)*. In general, in both math and in Dafny, in particular, the type of a tuple in a set product, $:: S\_1 \ times \ S\_2 \ times \ ldots \ time \ S\_n$, where the types of these sets are $T_1, \ldots, T_n$ is $(T_1, \ldots, T_n)$.

The elements of a tuple are sometimes called *fields of that tuple. Given an* \**n*-tuple, *t*, we are often interested in working with the value of one of its fields. We thus need a function for *projecting* the value of a field out of a tuple. We actually think of an *n*-tuple as coming with *n* projection functions, one for each field.

Projection functions are usually written using the Greek letter, $::pi$, with a natural number subscript indicating which field a given projection function " projects". Given a *4*-tuple, *t = (7, X, "house", square_func)*, we would have math$::pi\_0(t) = 7$ and $\pi_3(t) = square_func$.

The type of a projection funcion is *function from tuple type to field type*. In general, because tuples have fields of different types, they will also have projection functions of different types. For example, $pi_0$ here is of type (in Dafny) $(int, variable, string, int \to int) \to \mathbb{Z}$ while $pi_3$ is of type $(int, variable, string, int \to int) \to (int \to int)$.

In Dafny, tuples are written as they are in mathematics, as lists of field values separated by commas and enclosed in parentheses. For example *t := (1, "hello", [1,2,3])" assigns to *t* a *3-tuple* whose first field has the value, *1* (of type *int*); whose second field has the value, "hello", a string; and whose third element is the list of integers, *[2, 4, 6]*.

Projection in Dafny is accomplished using the *tuple* subscripting (as opposed to array or list subscripting) operation. Tuple subscripting is done by putting a dot (period) followed by an index after the tuple expression. Here's a little Dafny code to illustrate. It defines *t* to be the triple, *(7, 'X', "hello")* (of type *(int, char, string)*), and then usses the *.0* and *.2* projection functions to project the first and third elements of the tuple, which it prints. To make the type of the tuple explicit, the final line of code declare *t'* to be the same tuple value, but this time explicitly declares its type.

```
var t := (7, 'X', "hello");
print t.0;
print t.2;
var t': (int, char, string) := (7, 'X', "hello");
```

While all of this might seem a little abstract, it's actually simple and very useful. Any table of data, such as a table with columns that hold names, birthdays, and social security numbers, represents data in a product set. Each row is a tuple. The columns correspond to the sets from which the field values are drawn. One set is a set of names; the second, a set birthdays; the third, a set of social security numbers. Each row is just a particular tuple in product of these three sets, and the table as a whole is what we call a *relation*. If you have heard of a *relational database*, you now know what kind of data such a system handles: tables, i.e., *relations*.

## 8.6.1 Power Set

The power set of a set, *S*, denoted $\mathbb{P}(S)$, is the set of all subsets of *S*, including both the set itself and the empty set. If *S = {1, 2}*, for example, then the powerset of *S* is the set of sets, *{ {}, { 1 }, { 2 }, { 1, 2} }*. Note that the powerset of a set with two elements has four elements.

Exercise: Before continuing, write out the elements of the powersets of the sets, *{ 1, 2, 3 }* and *{ 1, 2, 3, 4 }*. How many elements do these powersets have? (What are their cardinalities?) Can you guess a formula for the cardinality of the powerset of a set with cardinality, *n*? Can you convince yourself that this formula is always right?

The powerset of a set of cardinality *n* has $2^n$ elements. To see that this is always true, first, consider the powerset of the empty set, then consider what happens when you increase the size of a set by one element. Start with the empty set. The only subset of the empty set is the empty set itself, so the powerset of the empty set has just one element. The cardinality of the empty set is *0*. The cardinality of its powerset is *1*. And that is the same as $2^0$. Now let's suppose that our formula holds for any set *S*, with cardinality *n*. What is the cardinality of a set with one more element? Its powerset contains every set in the powerset of *S*, as those are all subsets of the larger set. Then to each of those sets, we can add the one new element to produce all the new subsets. We thus have double the original number of subsets. So if the cardinality of the powerset of *S*, of cardinality *n*, was $2^n$, then the cardinality of the set *S* plus one new element is $2 * 2^n$, which is $2 * 2^n$. We know that the powerset of the empty set has cardinality *1*, and from there for each element we add we double the size of the powerset, so the formula holds for sets of any finite size!

The rule holds for sets of size zero, and whenver it holds for sets of size *n* it also holds for sets of size *n + 1*, so it must hold for sets of every (finite) size. What we have here is an informal *proof by induction* of the mathematical proposition, that: $\forall S, |\mathbb{P}(S)| = 2^{|S|}$.

In Dafny, there is no explicit powerset operator, but we know exactly how to implement one of our own. The concept can be expressed in a very elegant way using a set comprehension. The solution is simply to say *the set of all sets that are subsets of a given set, *S*. In mathematical notation, $\mathbb{P}(S) = R|R \subseteq S$. In Dafny it's basically the same expression.

The follwing three-line program computes and prints out the powerset of $S = \{ 1, 2, 3 \}$.

```
var S := { 1, 2, 3 };
var P := set R | R <= S;
print P;
```

Exercise: Write a polymorphic function method, *powerset<A>(S: set<A>) in Dafny that when given a value, *S*, of type set<A> returns its powerset. You have to figure out the return type: think "set of sets".

# RELATIONS

A relation in nothing but a subset of (the tuples in) a product set. A table such as the one just described, will, in practice, usually not have a row with every possible combination of names, birthdays, and SSNs. In other words, it won't be the entire product of the sets from which the field values drawn. Rather, it will usually contain a small subset of the product set.

In mathematical writing, we will thus often see a sentence of the form, Let $R \subseteq S \times T$ be a (binary) relation on $S$ and $T$. All this says is that $R$ is some subset of the set of all tuples in the product set of $S$ and $T$. If $S$ = { hot, cold } and $T$ = { cat, dog }, then the product set is { (hot, cat), (hot, dog), (cold, cat), (cold, dog) }, and a relation on $S$ and $T$ is any subset of this product set. The set, { (hot, cat), (cold, dog) } is thus one such relation on $S$ and $T$.

Here's an exercise. If $S$ and $T$ are finite sets, with cardinalities $|S| = n$ and $|T| = m$, how many relations are there over $S$ and $T$? Hint: First, how many tuples are in the product set? Second, how many subsets are there of that set? For fun, write a little Dafny program that takes two sets of integers as arguments as return the number of relations over them. Write another function that takes two sets and returns the set of all possible relations over the sets. Use a set comprehension expression rather than writing a while loop. Be careful: the number of possible relations will be very large even in cases where the given sets contain only a few elements each.

## 9.1 Binary Relations

Binary relations, which play an especially important role in mathematics and computer science, are relations over just 2 sets. Suppose $R \subseteq S \times T$ is a binary relation on $S$ and $T$. Then $S$ is called the *domain* of the relation, and $T$ is called its *co-domain.* That is, a binary relation is a subset of the ordered pairs in a product of the given domain and codomain sets.

If a particular tuple, *(s, t)* is an element of such a relation, $R$, we will say $R$ is *defined for* the value, s, and that $R$ *achieves* the value, *t.* The *support* of a relation is the subset of values in the domain on which it is defined. The *range* of a relation is the subset of co-domain values that it achieves.

For example, if $S$ = { hot, cold } and $T$ = { cat, dog }, and $R$ = *{ (hot, cat), (hot, dog) }, then the domain of $R$ is $S$; the co-domain of $R$ is $T$; the support of $R$ is just *{ hot }* (and $R$ is thus *not defined* for the value *cold*); and the range of $R$ is the whole co-domain, *T.*

The everyday functions you have studies in mathematics are binary relations, albeit usually infinite ones. For example, the *square* function, that associates every real number with its square, can be understood as the infinite set of ordered pairs of real numbers in which the second is the square of the first. Mathematically this is :{ (x, y) | y = x^2 }:', where we take as implicit that $x$ and $y$ range over the real numbers. Elements of this set include the pairs, *(-2, 4)* and *(2, 4).*

The concept of *square roots* of real numbers is also best understood as a relation. The tuples are again pairs of real numbers, but now the elements include tuples, *(4, 2)* and *(4, -2).*

## 9.2 Methods for Applying Relations

Like functions, relations can be applied to arguments. Rather than single element values, such applications return sets of elements, as relations are in general not single valued. The set of values returned when a relation is applied to an argument is called the *image* of that element under the given relation.

The image of a domain value under a relation is the set of values to which the relation

maps that domain element. This method provides this behavior. It computes and returns the image of a domain element under this relation. It requires that the given value actually be in the domain set. Note that if the relation is not defined for an element in its domain, the image of that value will simply be the empty set.

```
function method image(k: Stype): (r: set<Stype>)
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    requires k in dom();
    ensures Valid();
{
    r.image(k)
}
```

The image of a *set* of domain elements is the union of the images of the elements in that set. A precondition for calling this function is that all argument values (in ks) be in the domain of this relation.

```
function method imageOfSet(ks: set<Stype>): (r: set<Stype>)
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    requires forall k :: k in ks ==> k in dom();
    ensures Valid();
{
    r.imageOfSet(ks)
}
```

Given an element in the range of a relation, its preimage is the set of elements in in the domain that map to it. This function returns the preimage of a given value in the range of this relation. It is a precondition that v be in the codomain of this relation.

```
function method preimage(v: Stype): (r: set<Stype>)
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    requires v in codom();
    ensures Valid();
{
    r.preimage(v)
}
```

Compute image of a domain element under this relation.

```
function method preimageOfSet(vs: set<Stype>): (r: set<Stype>)
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    requires forall v :: v in vs ==> v in codom();
    ensures Valid();
```

```
{
    r.preimageOfSet(vs)
}
```

A relation is said to be defined for a given domain element, k, if the relation maps k to at least one value in the codomain.

```
predicate method isDefinedFor(k: Stype)
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    requires k in dom();
    ensures Valid();
{
    r.isDefinedFor(k)
}


If this relation is a function, then we can
"apply" it to a single value, on which this
function is defined, to get a single result.
```

```
method apply(k: Stype) returns (ret: Stype)
    requires Valid();
    requires k in dom();   // only ask about domain values
    requires isFunction(); // only ask if this is a function
    requires isTotal();    // that is defined for every value
    requires isDefinedFor(k);  // and that is non-empty
    //  ensures ret in image(k);  // want |image(k)| == 1, too
    ensures Valid();
{
    ret := r.fimage(k);
}
```

# 9.3 Inverse of a Binary Relation

The inverse of a given binary relation is simply the set of tuples formed by reversing the order of all of the given tuples. To put this in mathematical notation, if $R$ is a relation, its inverse, denoted $R^{-1}$, is $\{(y,x)|(x,y) \in R\}$. You can see this immediately in our example of squares and square roots. Each of these relations is the inverse of the other. One contains the tuples, *(-2, 4), (2, 4)*, while the other contains *(4, 2), (4, -2)*.

It should immediately be clear that the inverse of a function is not always also a function. The inverse of the *square* function is the *square root* relation, but that relation is not itself a function, because it is not single valued.

Here's a visual way to think about these concept. Consider the graph of the *square* function. Its a parabola that opens either upward in the $y$ direction, or downward. Now select any value for $x$ and draw a vertical line. It will intersect the parabola at only one point. The function is single-valued.

The graph of a square root function, on the other hand, is a parabola that opens to the left or right. So if one draws a vertial line at some value of $x$, either the line fails to hit the graph at all (the square root function is not defined for all values of $x$), or it intersects the line at two points. The square root "function" is not single-valued, and isn't really even a *function* at all. (If the vertical line hits the parabola right at its bottom, the set of points at which it intersects contains just one element, but if one takes the solution set to be a *multi-set*, then the value, zero, occurs in that set twice.)

A function whose inverse is a function is said to be *invertible*. The function, $f(x) = x$ (or $y = x$ if you prefer) is invertible in this sense. In fact, its inverse is itself.

Exercise: Is the cube root function invertible? Prove it informally.

Exercise: Write a definition in mathematical logic of what precisely it means for a function to be invertible. Model your definition on our definition of what it means for a relation to be single valued.

## 9.4 Functions: *Single-Valued* Relations

A binary-relation is said to be *single-valued* if it does not have tuples with the same first element and different second elements. A single-valued binary relation is also called a *function*. Another way to say that $R$ is single valued is to say that if *(x, y)* and *(x, z)* are both in $R$ then it must be that $y$ and $z$ are the same value. Otherwise the relation would not be single-valued! To be more precise, then, if $R \subseteq S \times T$, is single valued relation, then $(x, y) \in R \wedge (x, z) \in R \to y = z$.

As an example of a single-valued relation, i.e., a function, consider the *square*. For any given natural number (in the domain) under this function there is just a *single* associated value in the range (the square of the first number). The relation is single-valued in exactly this sense. By contrast, the square root relation is not a function, because it is not single-valued. For any given non-negative number in its domain, there are *two* associated square roots in its range. The relation is not single-valued and so it is not a function.

There are several ways to represent functions in Dafny, or any other programming language. One can represent a given function *implicity*: as a *program* that computes that function. But one can also represent a function *explicitly*, as a relation: that is, as a set of pairs. The (polymorphic) *map* type in Dafny provides such a representation.

A "map", i.e., a value of type *map<S,T>* (where $S$ and $T$ are type parameters), is to be understood as an explicit representation of a single-valued relation: a set of pairs: a function. In addition to a mere set of pairs, this data type also provides helpful functions and a clever representation underlying representation that both enforce the single-valuedness of maps, and that make it very efficient to look up range values given domain values where the map is defined, i.e., to *apply* such a function to a domain value (a "key") to obtained the related range *value*.

Given a Dafny map object, *m*, of type *map<S,T>*, one can obtain the set of values of type $S$ for which the map is defined as *m.Keys()*. One can obtain the range, i.e., the set of values of type $T$ that the map maps *to*, as *m.Values()*. One can determine whether a given key, *s* of type $S$ is defined in a map with the expression, *s in m*.

Exercise: Write a method (or a function) that when given a map<S,T> as an argument returns a set<(T,S)> as a result where the return result represents the *inverse* of the map. The inverse of a function is not necessarily a function so the inverse of a map cannot be represented as a map, in general. Rather, we represent the inverse just as a *set* of *(S,T)* tuples.

Exercise: Write a pure function that when given a set of ordered pairs returns true if, viewed as a relation, the set is also a function, and that returns false, otherwise.

Exercise: Write a function or method that takes a set of ordered pairs with a pre-condition requiring that the set satisfy the predicate from the preceding exercise and that then returns a *map* that contains the same set of pairs as the given set.

Exercise: Write a function that takes a map as an argument and that returns true if the function that it represents is invertible and that otherwise returns false. Then write a function that takes a map satisfying the precondition that it be invertible and that in this case returns its inverse, also as a map.

## 9.5 Properties of Functions

We now introduce essential concepts and terminology regarding for distinguishing essential properties and special cases of functions.

### 9.5.1 Total vs Partial

A function is said to be *total* if every element of its domain appears as the first element in at least one tuple, i.e., its *support* is its entire *domain*. A function that is not total is said to be *partial*. For example, the square function on the real numbers is total, in that it is defined on its entire real number domain. By contrast, the square root function is not total (if it domain is taken to be the real numbers) because it is not defined for real numbers that are less than zero.

Note that if one considers a slightly different function, the square root function on the *non-negative* real numbers the only difference being in the domainm then this function *is* total. Totality is thus relative to the specified domain. Here we have two functions with the very same set of ordered pairs, but one is total and the other is not.

Exercises: Is the function $y = x$ on the real numbers total? Is the *log* function defined on the non-negative real numbers total? Answer: no, because it's not defined at $x = 0$. Is the *SSN* function, that assigns a U.S. Social Security Number to every person, total? No, not every person has a U.S. Social Security number.

Implementing partial functions as methods or pure function in software presents certain problems. Either a pre-conditions has to be enforced to prevent the function or method being called with a value for which it's not defined, or the function or method needs to be made total by returning some kind of *error* value if it's called with such a value. In this case, callers of such a function are obligated always to check whether *some* validfunction value was returned or whether instead a value was returned that indicates that there is *no such value*. Such a value indicates an *error* in the use of the function, but one that the program caught. The failure of programmers systematically to check for *error returns* is a common source of bugs in real software.

Finally we note that by enforcing a requirement that every loop and recursion terminates, Dafny demands that every function and method be total in the sense that it returns and that it returns some value, even it it's a value that could flag an error.

When a Dafny total function is used to implement a mathematical function that is itself partial (e.g., *log(x)* for any real number, *x*), the problem thus arises what to return for inputs for which the underlying mathematical function is not defined. A little later in the course we will see a nice way to handle this issue using what are called *option* types. An option type is like a box that contains either a good value or an error flag; and to get a good value out of such a box, one must explicitly check to see whether the box has a good value in it or, alternatively, and error flag.

### 9.5.2 Injective

A function is said to be *injective* if no two elements of the domain are associated with the same element in the co-domain. (Note that we are limiting the concept of injectivity to functions.) An injective function is also said to be *one-one-one*, rather than *many-to-one*.

Take a moment to think about the difference between being injective and single valued. Single-valued means no *one* element of the domain "goes to" **\***more than one" value in the range. Injective means that "no more than one" value in the domain "goes to" and one value in the range.

Exercise: Draw a picture. Draw the domain and range sets as clouds with points inside, representing objects (values) in the domain and co-domain. Represent a relation as a set of *arrows* that connect domain objects to co-domain objects. The arrows visually depict the ordered pairs in the relation. What does it look like visually for a relation to be single-valued? What does it look like for a relation to be injective?

The square function is a function because it is single-valued, but it is not injective. To see this, observe that two different values in the domain, *-2* and *2*, have the same value in the co-domain: *4*. Think about the graph: if you can draw a *horizontal* line for any value of $y$ that intersects the graph at multiple points, then the points at which it intersects correspond to different values of $x$ that have the same value *under the relation*. Such a relation is not injective.

Exercises: Write a precise mathematical definition of what it means for a binary relation to be injective. Is the cube root function injective? Is $f(x) = sin(x)$ injective?

### An Aside: Injectivity in Type Theory

As an aside, we note that the concept of injectivity is essential in *type theory*. Whereas *set theory* provides a universally accepted axiomatic foundation for mathematics, *type* theory is of increasing interest as alternative foundation. It is also at the very heart of a great deal of work in programming languages and software verification.

Type theory takes types rather than sets to be elementary. A type in type theory comprises a collection of objects, just as a set does in set theory. But whereas in set theory, an object can be in many sets, in type theory, and object can have only one type.

The set of values of a given type is defined by a set of constants and functions called constructors. Constant constructors define what one can think of as the *smallest* values of a type, while constructors that are functions provide means to build larger values of a type by *packaging up" smaller values of the same and/or other types.

As a simple example, one might say that the set of values of the type, *Russian Doll,* is given by one constant constructor, *SolidDoll* and by one constructor function, *NestDoll* that takes a nested doll as an argument (the solid one or any other one built by *NestDoll* itself). Speaking intuitively, this constructor function does nothing other than *package up* the smaller nest doll it was given inside a "box" labelled *NestDoll*. One can thus obtain a nested doll either as the constant *SolidDoll* or by applying the *NestDoll* constructor some finite number of times to smaller nested dolls. Such a nesting will always be finitely deep, with the solid doll at the core.

A key idea in type theory is that *constructors are injective.* Two values of a given type built by different constructors, or by the same constructor with different arguments, are *always* different. So, for example, the solid doll is by definition unequal to any doll built by the *NestDoll* constructor; and a russian doll nested two levels deep (built by applying *NestDoll* to an argument representing a doll that is nested one level deep)is necessarily unequal to a russian doll one level deep (built by applying *NestDoll* to the solid doll).

Running this inequality idea in reverse, we can conclude that if two values of a given type are known to be equal, then for sure they were constructed by the same constructor taking the same arguments (if any). It turns out that knowing such a fact, rooted in the *injectivity of constructors* is often essential to completing proofs about programs using type theory. But more on this later.

### 9.5.3 Surjective

A function is said to be *surjective* if for every element, *t*, in the co-domain there is some element, *s* in the domain such that *(s,t)* is in the relation. That is, the range *range* of the function is its whole co-domain. Mathematically, a relation $R \subseteq S \times T$ is surjective if $\forall t \in T, \exists s \in S \mid (s,t) \in R$.

In the intuitive terms of high school algebra, a function involving $x$ and $y$ is surjective if for any given $y$ value there is always some $x$ that "leads to" that $y$. The *square* function on the real numbers is not surjective, because there is no $x$ that when squared gets one to $y = $ *-1*.

Exercise: Is the function, $f(x) = sin(x)$, from the real numbers (on the x-axis) to real numbers (on the y-axis) surjective? How might you phrase an informal but rigorous proof of your answer?

Exercise: Is the inverse of a surjective function always total? How would you "prove" this with a rigorous, step-by-step argument based on the definitions we've given here? Hint: It is almost always useful to start with definitions. What does it mean for a relation to be total? What does it mean for one relation to be the inverse of another? How can you connect these definitons to show for sure that your answer is right?

## 9.5.4 Bijective

A function is said to be *bjective* if it is also both injective and surjective. Such a function is also often called a *bijection.*

Take a moment to think about the implications of being a bijection. Consider a bijective relation, $R \subseteq S \times T$. $R$ is total, so there is an *arrow* from every $s$ in $S$ to some $t$ in $T$. $R$ is injective, so no two arrows from any $s$ in $s$ ever hit the same $t$ in $T$. An injection is one-to-one. So there is exactly one $t$ in $T$ hit by each $s$ in $S$. But $R$ is also surjective, so every $t$ in $T$ is hit by some arrow from $S$. Therefore, there has to be exactly one element in $t$ for each element in $s$. So the sets are of the same size, and there is a one-to-one correspondence between their elements.

Now consider some $t$ in $T$. It must be hit by exactly one arrow from $S$, so the *inverse* relation, $R^{-1}$, from $T$ to $S$, must also single-valued (a function). Moreover, because $R$ is surjective, every $t$ in $T$ is hit by some $s$ in $S$, so the inverse relation is defined for every $t$ in $T$. It, too, is total. Now every arrow from any $s$ to some $t$ leads back from that $t$ to that $s$, so the inverse And it's also (and because $R$ is total, there is such an arror for *every* $s$ in $S$), the inverse relation is surjective (it covers all of $S$).

Exercise: Must the inverse of a bijection be one-to-one? Why or why not? Make a rigorous argument based on assumptions derived from our definitions.

Exercise: Must a bijective function be invertible? Make a rigorous argument.

Exercise: What is the inverse of the inverse of a bijective function, $R$. Prove it with a rigorous argument.

A bijection estabishes an invertible, one-to-one correspondence between elements of two sets. Bijections can only be established between sets of the same size. So if you want to prove that two sets are of the same size, it suffices to show that one can define a bijection between the two sets. That is, one simply shows that there is some function that covers each element in each set with arrows connecting them, one-to-one in both directions.

Exercise: Prove that the number of non-negative integers (the cardinality of $\mathbb{N}$), is the same as the number of non-negative fractions (the cardinality of $\mathbb{Q}^+$).

Exercise: How many bijective relations are there between two sets of cardinality $k$? Hint: Pick a first element in the first set. There are $n$ ways to map it to some element in the second set. Now for the second element in the first set, there are only *(n-1)* ways to pair it up with an element in the second set, as one cannot map it to the element chosen in the first step (the result would not be injective). Continue this line of reasoning until you get down to all elements having been mapped.

Exercise: How many bijections are there from a set, *S*, to itself? You can think of such a bijection as a simple kind of encryption. For example, if you map each of the *26* letters of the alphabet to some other letter, but in a way that is unambiguous (injective!), then you have a simple encryption mechanisms. How many ways can you encrypt a text that uses *26* letters in this way? Given a cyphertext, how would you recover the original plaintext?

Exercise: If you encrypt a text in this manner, using a bijection, *R* and then encrpty the resulting cyphertext using another one *T*, can you necessarily recover the plaintext? How? Is there a *single* bijection that would have accomplished the same encryption result? Would the inverse of that bijection effectively decrypt messages?

Exercise: Is the composition of any two bijections also a bijection? If so, can you express its inverse in terms of the inverses of the two component bijections?

Exercise: What is the *identity* bijection on the set of *26* letters?

Question: Are such bijections commutative? That is, you have two of them, say $R$ and $T$, is the bijection that you get by applying $R$ and then $T$ the same as the bijection you get by applying $T$ and then $R$? If your answer is *no*, prove it by giving a counterexample (e.g., involving bijections on a small set). If your answer is yes, make rigorous argument.

Programming exercise: Implement encryption and decryption schemes in Dafny using bijections over the *26* capital letters of the English alphabet.

Programming exercise: Implement a *compose* function in Dafny that takes two pure functions, $R$ and $T$, each implementing a bijection between the set of capital letters and that returns a pure function that when applied has the effect of first applying $T$ then applying $R$.

## 9.6 Properties of Relations

Functions are special cases of (single-valued) binary relations. The properties of being partial, total, injective, surjective, bijective are generally associated with *functions*, i.e., with relations that are already single-valued. Now we turn to properties of relations more generally.

### 9.6.1 Reflexive

Consider a binary relation on a set with itself. That is, the domain and the co-domain are the same sets. A relation that maps real numbers to real numbers is an example. It is a subset of $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}$. The *friends* relation on a social network site that associates people with people is another example.

Such a relation is said to be *reflexive* if it associates every element with itself. The equality relation (e.g., on real numbers) is the "canonical" example of a reflexive relation. It associates every number with itself and with no other number. The tuples of the equality relation on real numbers thus includes *(2.5, 2.5)* and (-3.0, -3.0)* but not *(2.5, -3.0)*.

In more mathematical terms, consider a set $S$ and a bindary relation, $R$, on S*S, $R \subseteq S \times S$. $R$ is reflexive, which we can write as *Reflexive(R)*, if and only if for every $e$ in $S$, the tuple *(e,e)* is in R. Or to be rigorous about it, $Reflexive(R) \iff \forall e \in S, (e, e) \in R$.

Exercise: Is the function, $y = x$, reflexive? If every person loves themself, is the *loves* relation reflexive? Is the *less than or equals* relation reflexive? Hint: the tuples *(2,3)* and *(3,3)* are in this relation becaue *2* is less than or equal to *3*, and so is *3*, but *(4,3)* is not in this relation, because *4* isn't less than or equal to *3*. Is the less than relation reflexive?

### 9.6.2 Symmetric

A binary relation, $R$, on a set $S$ is said to be *symmetric* if whenever the tuple *(x,y)* is in $R$, the tuple, *(y,x)* is in $R$ as well. On Facebook, for example, if Joe is "friends" with "Tom" then "Tom" is necessarily also friends with "Joe." The Facebook friends relation is thus symmetric in this sense.

More formally, if $R$ is a binary relation on a set $S$, i.e., given $R \subseteq S \times S$, then $Symmetric(R) \iff \forall (x, y) \in R, (y, x) \in R$.

Question: is the function $y = x$ symmetric? How about the *square* function? In an electric circuit, if a conducting wire connects terminal $T$ to terminal $Q$, it also connects terminal $Q$ to terminal $T$ in the sense that electricity doesn't care which way it flows over the wire. Is the *connects* relation in electronic circuits symmetric? If $A$ is *near* $B$ then $B$ is *near* $A$. Is *nearness* symmetric? In the real work is the *has-crush-on* relation symmetric?

### 9.6.3 Transitive

Given a binary relation $R \subseteq S \times S$, $R$ is said to be transitive if whenever *(x,y)* is in $R$ and *(y,z)* is in $R$, then *(x,z)* is also in $R$. Formally, $Transitive(R) \iff forall(x,y)inR, \forall(y,z) \in R, (x,z) \in R$.

Exercise: Is equality transitive? That is, if $a = b$ and $b = c$ it is also necessarily the case that $a = c$? Answer: Sure, any sensible notion of an equality relation has this transitivity property.

Exercise: What about the property of being less than? If $a < b$ and $b < c$ is it necessarily the case that $a < c$? Answer: again, yes. The less than, as well as the less than or equal, and greater then, and the greater than or equal relations, are all transitive.

How about the *likes* relation amongst real people. If Harry likes Sally and Sally likes Bob does Harry necesarily like Bob, too? No, the human "likes" relation is definitely not transitive. (And this is the cause of many a tragedy.)

### 9.6.4 Equivalence

Finally (for now), a relation is said to be an *equivalence relation* if it is reflexive, transitive, and symmetric. Formally, we can write this property as a conjunction of the three individual properties: $Equivalence(R) \iff Symmetric(R) \wedge Reflexive(R) \wedge Transitive(R)$. Equality is the canonical example of an equivalence relation: it is reflexive $(x = x)$, symmetric (if $x = y$ then $y = x$) and transitive (if $x = y$ and $y = z$ then $x = z$.).

An important property of equivalence relations is that they divide up a set into subsets of *equivalent* values. As an example, take the equivalence relation on people, *has same birthday as*. Clearly every person has the same birthday as him or herself; if Joe has the same birthday as Mary, then Mary has the same birthday as Joe; and if Tom has the same birthday as mary then Joe necessarily also has the same birthday as Tom. This relation thus divides the human population into 366 equivalence classes. Mathematicians usually use the notation $a \sim b$ to denote the concept that $a$ is equivalent to $b$ (under whatever equivalence relation is being considered).

## 9.7 Basic Order Theory

Ordering is a relational concept. When we say that one value is less than another, for example, we are saying how those values are related under some binary relation. For example, the less than relation on the integers is an ordering relation. We sometimes call such a relation as *an order*.

There are many different kinds of orders. They include total orders, partial orders, pre-orders. In this section we precisely define what properties a binary relation must have to be considered as belonging to one or another of these categories. The study of such relations is called order theory.

### 9.7.1 Preorder

A relation is said to be a *preorder* if it is reflexive and transitive. That is, every element is related to itself, and if e1 is related to e2 and e2 to e3, then e1 is also related to e3.

A canonical example of a preorder is the *reachability relation* for a directed graph. If every element reaches itself and if there's also a direct or indirect *path* from a to b then a is said to reach b.

Subtyping relations in object-oriented programming languages are also often preorders. Every type is a subtype of itself, and if A is a subtype of B, B of C, then A is also a subtype of C.

Given any relation you can obtain a preorder by taking its reflexive and transitive closure.

Unlike a partial order (discussed below), a preorder in general is not antisymmetric. And unlike an equivalence relation, a preorder is not necesarily symmetric.

```
predicate method isPreorder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isReflexive() && isTransitive()
}
```

### 9.7.2 Partial Order

A binary relation is said to be a partial order if it is a preorder (reflexive and transitive) and also *antisymmetric*. Recall that anti-symmetry says that the only way that both (x, y) and (y, x) can be in the relation at once is if x==y. The less-than-or-equal relation on the integers is anti-symmetric in this sense.

Another great example of a partial order is the "subset-of" relation on the powerset of a given set. It's reflexivem as every set is a subset of itself. It's anti-symmetric because if S is a subset of T and T is a subset of S then it must be that T=S. And it's transitive, because if S is a subset of T and T a subset of R then S must also be a subset of R.

This relation is a *partial* order in that not every pair of subsets of a set are "comparable," which is to say it is possible that neither is a subset of the other. The sets, {1, 2} and {2, 3}, are both subsets of the set, {1, 2, 3}, for example, but neither is a subset of the other, so they are not *comparable* under this relation.

```
predicate method isPartialOrder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    isPreorder() && isAntisymmetric()
}
```

### 9.7.3 Total Order

The kind of order most familiar from elementary mathematics is a "total" order. The natural and real numbers are totally ordered under the less than or equals relation, for example. Any pair of such numbers is "comparable." That is, given any two numbers, x and y, either (x, y) or (y, x) is (or both are) in the "less than or equal relation."

A total order, also known as a linear order, a simple order, or a chain, is a partial order with the additional property that any two elements, x and y, are comparable. This pair of properties arranges the set into a fully ordered collection.

A good example is the integers under the less than or equal operator. By contrast, subset inclusion is a partial order, as two sets, X and Y, can both be subsets of ("less than or equal to") a set Z, with neither being a subset of the other.

```
predicate method isTotalOrder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
```

```
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    isPartialOrder() && isTotal()
}
```

## 9.8 Additional Properties of Relations

### 9.8.1 Total Relation

We now define what it means for a binary relation to be "total," also called "complete." NOTE! The term, "total", means something different when applied to binary relations, in general, than when it is applied to the special case of functions. A function is total if for every x in S there is some y to which it is related (or mapped, as we say). By contrast, a binary relation is said to be *total*, or *complete*, if for any\* pair of values, x and y in S, either (or both) of (x, y) or (y, x) is in the relation.

A simple example of a total relation is the less than or equals relation on integers. Given any two integers, x and y, it is always the case that either x <= y or y <= x, or both if they're equal.

Another example of a total binary relation is what economists call a preference relation. A preference relation is a mathematical model of a consumer's preferences. It represents the idea that given *any* two items, or outcomes, x and y, one will always find one of them to be "at least as good as" the other. These ideas belong to the branch of economics called "utility theory."

The broader point of this brief diversion into the field of economics is to make it clear that what seem like very abstract concepts (here the property of a binary relation being complete or not) have deep importance in the real world: in CS as well as in many other fields.

We can now formalize the property of being total. A binary relation, R, on a set, S, is said to be "complete," "total" or to have the "comparability" property if *any* two elements, x and y in S, are related one way or the other by R, i.e., at least one of (x, y) and (y, x) is in R.

```
predicate method isTotal()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    forall x, y :: x in dom() && y in dom() ==>
        (x, y) in rel() || (y, x) in rel()
}


predicate method isComplete()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isTotal()
}
```

## 9.8.2 Irreflexive

A relation on a set S is said to be irreflexive if no element is related to, or maps, to itself. As an example, the less than relation on natural numbers is irreflexive: not natural number is less than itself.

```
predicate method isIrreflexive()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    forall x :: x in dom() ==> (x,x) !in rel()
}
```

## 9.8.3 Antisymmetric

A binary relation is said to be antisymmetric if whenever both (x, y) and (y, x) are in the relation, it must be that x == y. A canonical example of an antisymmetric relation is <= on the natural numbers. If x <= y and y <= x (and that is possible) then it must be that x == y.

```
predicate method isAntisymmetric()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    forall x, y ::    x in dom()   &&   y in dom() &&
                   (x,y) in rel() && (y,x) in rel() ==>
                   x == y
}
```

## 9.8.4 Asymmetric

A binary relation, R, is said to be asymmetric (as distinct from anti-symmetric) if it is both anti-symmetric and also irreflexive. The latter property rules out an element being related to itself. Think of it as removing the possibility of being "equal" in an otherwise anti-symmetric (such as less than or equal) relation.

More precisely, in an asymmetric relation, for all elements a and and b, if a is related to b in R, then b is not and cannot be related to a.

The canonical example of an asymmetric relation is less than on the integers. If a < b then it cannot also be that b < a. To be asymmetric is the same as being antisymmetric and irreflexive.

```
predicate method isAsymmetric()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    isAntisymmetric() && isIrreflexive()
}
```

### 9.8.5 Quasi-reflexive

A binary relation on a set, S, is said to be quasi-reflexive if every element that is related to some other element is also related to itself.

Adapted from Wikipedia: An example is a relation "has the same limit as" on infinite sequences of real numbers. Recall that some such sequences do converge on a limit. For example, the infinite sequence, 1/n, for n = 1 to infinity, converges on (has limit) zero. Not every sequence of real numbers has such a limit, so the "has same limit as" relation is not reflexive. But if one sequence has the same limit as some other sequence, then it has the same limit as itself.

```
predicate method isQuasiReflexive()
     reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    forall x, y ::
        x in dom() && y in dom() && (x,y) in rel() ==>
            (x,x) in rel() && (y,y) in rel()
}
```

### 9.8.6 Co-reflexive

A binary relation is said to be coreflexive is for all x and y in S it holds that if xRy then x = y. Every coreflexive relation is a subset of an identity relation (in which every element is related to and only to itself). A relation is thus co-reflexive if it relates just some objects to, and only to, themselves.

For example, if every odd number is related itself under an admittedly "odd" version of equality, then this relation is coreflexive.

```
predicate method isCoreflexive()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    forall x, y :: x in dom() && y in dom() &&
        (x,y) in rel() ==> x == y
}
```

## 9.9 More Advanced Order Theory Concepts

### 9.9.1 Total Preorder

A total preorder is preorder in which every pair of elements is comparable, e.g., for every node a and b, either a reaches b or b reaches a. That is, there are no pairs of elements that are *incomparable*.

```
predicate method isTotalPreorder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
```

```
    ensures Valid();
    {
        isPreorder() && isTotal()
    }
```

## 9.9.2 Strict Partial Order

A relation R is a strict partial order if it's irreflexive, antisymmetric, and transitive. A canonical example is the less than (<) relation on a set of natural numbers.

```
predicate method isStrictPartialOrder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isIrreflexive() && isAntisymmetric() && isTransitive()
}
```

## 9.9.3 Quasi-order

A relation R is said to be a quasi-order if it is irreflexive and transitive.

The less than and proper subset inclusion relations are quasi-orders but not partial orders, because partial orders are necessarily also reflexive. The less than or equal and subset inclusion relations are partial orders but not quasi-orders because they are reflexive.

Compare with strict partial ordering, which is a quasi-order that is also anti-symmetric.

This definition of quasi order is from Stanat and McAllister, Discrete Mathematics in Computer Science, Prentice-Hall, 1977. Others define quasi-order as synonymous with preorder. See Rosen, Discrete Mathematicas and Its Applications, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, 1999.

```
predicate method isQuasiOrder()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isIrreflexive() && isTransitive()
}
```

## 9.9.4 Weak Ordering

"There are several common ways of formalizing weak orderings, that are different from each other but cryptomorphic (interconvertable with no loss of information): they may be axiomatized as strict weak orderings (partially ordered sets in which incomparability is a transitive relation), as total preorders (transitive binary relations in which at least one of the two possible relations exists between every pair of elements), or as ordered partitions (partitions of the elements into disjoint subsets, together with a total order on the subsets)....

... weak orders have applications in utility theory. In linear programming and other types of combinatorial optimization problem, the prioritization of solutions or of bases is often given by

a weak order, determined by a real-valued objective function; the phenomenon of ties in these orderings is called "degeneracy", and several types of tie-breaking rule have been used to refine this weak ordering into a total ordering in order to prevent problems caused by degeneracy.

Weak orders have also been used in computer science, in partition refinement based algorithms for lexicographic breadth-first search and lexicographic topological ordering. In these algorithms, a weak ordering on the vertices of a graph (represented as a family of sets that partition the vertices, together with a doubly linked list providing a total order on the sets) is gradually refined over the course of the algorithm, eventually producing a total ordering that is the output of the algorithm.

In the Standard (Template) Library for the C++ programming language, the set and multiset data types sort their input by a comparison function that is specified at the time of template instantiation, and that is assumed to implement a strict weak ordering." –Wikipedia

We formalize the concept as "total preorder."

```
predicate method isWeakOrdering()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isTotalPreorder()
}
```

A strict weak ordering is a strict partial order in which the relation "neither a R b nor b R a" is transitive. That is, for all x, y, z in S, if neither x R y nor y R x holds, and if neither y R z nor z R y holds, then neither x R z nor z R x holds.

In the C++ Standard Template Library (STL), if you want to use a standard sort routine or map data structure you have to define an overloaded < operator; and it has to imlpement a strict weak ordering relation.

From StackOverflow:

This notion, which sounds somewhat like an oxymoron, is not very commonly used in mathematics, but it is in programming. The "strict" just means it is the irreflexive form "<" of the comparison rather than the reflexive "<=". The "weak" means that the absence of both a<b and b<a do not imply that a=b. However as explained here, the relation that neither a<b nor b<a holds is required to be an equivalence relation. The strict weak ordering then induces a (strict) total ordering on the equivalence classes for this equivalence relation.

This notion is typically used for relations that are in basically total orderings, but defined using only partial information about the identity of items. For instance if a<b between persons means that a has a name that (strictly) precedes the name of b alphabetically, then this defines a strict weak order, since different persons may have identical names; the relation of having identical names is an equivalence relation.

One can easily show that for a strict weak ordering "<", the relation a !< b (a not less than b) is (reflexive and) transitive, so it is a pre-order,and the associated equivalence relation is the same as the one associated above to the strict weak ordering. In fact "a !< b" is a total pre-order which induces the same total ordering (or maybe it is better to say the opposite ordering, in view of the negation) on its equivalence classes as the strict weak ordering does. I think I just explained that the notions of strict weak ordering and total pre-order are equivalent. The WP article also does a reasonable job explaining this.

Marc van Leeuwen: If you are comparing strings, then you would often just define a total ordering (which is a special case of a strict weak ordering) like lexicographic ordering. However, it could be that you want to ignore upper case/lower case distinctions, which would make it into a true weak ordering (strings differing only by case distinctions would then form an equivalence class).

Note: isStrictWeakOrdering <==> isTotalPreorder (should verify)

```
predicate method isStrictWeakOrdering()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    isStrictPartialOrder() &&
    // and transitivity of incomparability
    forall x, y, z :: x in dom() && y in dom() && z in dom() &&
        (x, y) !in rel() && (y, z) !in rel() ==> (x, z) !in rel()
}
```

### 9.9.5 Well-Founded

A relation R on a set, S, is said to be well-founded if every non-empty subset, X, of S has a "minimum" element, such that there is no other element, x, in X, such that (x, min) is in X.

As an example, the the less than relation over the infinite set of natural numbers is well founded because in any subset of the natural numbers there is because there is always a minimal element, m: an element that is less than every other element in the set.

The concept of being well founded is vitally important for reasoning about when recursive definitions are valid. In a nutshell, each recursive call has to be moving "down" a finite chain to a minimum element. Another way to explain being well-founded is that a relation is not well founded if there's a way either to "go down" or to "go around in circles" forever. Here we give a version of well foundedness only for finite relations (there can never be an infinite descending chain); what this predicate basically rules out are cycles in a relation.

```
predicate method isWellFounded()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
{
    forall X | X <= dom() ::
        X != {} ==>
            exists min :: min in X &&
                forall s :: s in X ==> (s, min) !in rel()
}
```

## 9.10 Other Properties of Relations

### 9.10.1 Dependence Relation

A binary relation is said to be a dependency relation if it is finite, symmetric, and reflexive. That is, every element "depends on" itself, and if one depends on another, then the other depends on the first. The name, "mutual dependency" or "symmetric dependency" relation would make sense here.

```
predicate method isDependencyRelation()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
```

```
    ensures Valid();
{
    isSymmetric() && isReflexive()
}
```

## 9.10.2 Independency Relation

Return the complement of the given dependency relation on S. Such a relation is called an independency relation. Elements are related in such a relation if they are "independent" in the given dependency relation.

```
method independencyRelationOnS(d: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    requires d.Valid();
    requires d.isDependencyRelation();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom() &&
            r.rel() ==
                (set x, y | x in dom() && y in dom() :: (x,y)) -
                d.rel();
    ensures Valid();
{
    r := new binRelOnS(
        dom(),
        (set x,y | x in dom() && y in dom() :: (x,y)) - d.rel());
}
```

## 9.10.3 Trichotomous

A binary relation is said to be trichotomous if for any pair of values, x and y, either xRy or yRx or x==y. The < relation on natural numbers is an example of a trichotomous relation: given any two natural numbers, x and y, either x < y or y < x, or, if neither condition holds, then it must be that x = y.

```
predicate method isTrichotomous()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    forall x, y :: x in dom() && y in dom() ==>
        (x, y) in rel() || (y, x) in rel() || x == y
}
```

## 9.10.4 Right Euclidean

Dor all x, y and z in X it holds that if xRy and xRz, then yRz.

```
predicate method isRightEuclidean()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();
```

```
{
    forall x, y, z :: x in dom() && y in dom() && z in dom() ==>
        (x, y) in rel() && (x, z) in rel() ==> (y, z) in rel()
}
```

### 9.10.5 Left Euclidean

For all x, y and z in X it holds that if yRx and zRx, then yRz.

```
predicate method isLeftEuclidean()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    forall x, y, z :: x in dom() && y in dom() && z in dom() ==>
        (y, x) in rel() && (z, x) in rel() ==> (y, z) in rel()
}
```

### 9.10.6 Euclidean

A relation is said to be Euclidean if it is both left and right Euclidean. Equality is a Euclidean relation because if x=y and x=z, then y=z.

```
predicate method isEuclidean()
    reads this;
    reads r;
    requires Valid();
    ensures Valid();

{
    isLeftEuclidean() && isRightEuclidean()
}
```

## 9.11 Composition of Relations

Return the relation g composed with this relation, (g o this). The domains/codomains of g and this must be the same.

```
method compose(g: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    returns (c : binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    requires g.Valid();
    requires g.dom() == codom();
    ensures c.Valid();
    ensures c.dom() == dom();
    ensures c.codom() == dom();
    ensures c.rel() == set r, s, t |
            r in dom() &&
            s in codom() &&
```

```
            (r, s) in rel() &&
            s in g.dom() &&
            t in g.codom() &&
            (s, t) in g.rel() ::
            (r, t)
{
    var p := set r, s, t |
            r in dom() &&
            s in codom() &&
            (r, s) in rel() &&
            s in g.dom() &&
            t in g.codom() &&
            (s, t) in g.rel() ::
            (r, t);
    c := new binRelOnS(dom(), p);
}
```

## 9.12 Closure Operations

### 9.12.1 Reflexive Closure

The reflexive closure is the smallest relation that contains this relation and is reflexive. In particular, it's the union of this relation and the identity relation on the same set. That is how we compute it here.

```
method reflexiveClosure() returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures r.rel() == rel() + set x | x in dom() :: (x,x);
    ensures rel() <= r.rel();
    ensures Valid();
{
    var id := this.identity();
    r := relUnion(id);
}
```

### 9.12.2 Symmetric Closure

The symmetric closure is the smallest relation that contains this relation and is symmetric. In particular, it's the union of this relation and the inverse relation on the same set. It can be derived from this relation by taking all pairs, (s, t), and making sure that all reversed pairs, (t, s), are also included.

```
method symmetricClosure() returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures r.rel() == rel() + set x, y |
        x in dom() && y in codom() && (x, y) in rel():: (y, x);
    ensures rel() <= r.rel();
    ensures Valid();
{
    var inv := this.inverse();
```

```
    r := relUnion(inv);
}
```

### 9.12.3 Transitive Closure

The transitive closure of a binary relation, R, on a set, S, is the relation R plus all tuples, (x, y) when there is any "path" (a sequence of tuples) from x to y in R. In a finite relation. such as those modeled by this class, the length of a path is bounded by the size of the set, S, so we can always compute a transitive closure by following links and adding tuples enough times to have followed all maximum-length paths in R. That's what we do, here.

```
method transitiveClosure() returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures rel() <= r.rel();
    //ensures r.isTransitive(); -- need to prove it
    ensures Valid();
{
    var cl := rel();
    var n := |dom()|;
    while (n > 0)
        invariant forall x, y ::
            (x, y) in cl ==> x in dom() && y in dom()
        invariant rel() <= cl;
    {
        var new_pairs := set x, y, z |
                x in dom() && y in dom() && z in dom() &&
                (x, y) in cl && (y, z) in cl ::
                (x, z);
        if cl == cl + new_pairs { break; }
        cl := cl + new_pairs;
        n := n - 1;
    }
    r := new binRelOnS(dom(), cl);
}
```

### 9.12.4 Reflexive Transitive Closure

The reflexive transitive closure is the smallest relation that contains this relation and is both reflexive and transitive. KS FIX: Under-informative specification.

```
method reflexiveTransitiveClosure() returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures rel() <= r.rel();
    ensures Valid();
{
    var refc := this.reflexiveClosure();
    r := refc.transitiveClosure();
}
```

### 9.12.5 Reflexive Transitive Symmetric closure

```
method reflexiveSymmetricTransitiveClosure()
    returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures rel() <= r.rel();
    ensures Valid();
{
    var refc := this.reflexiveClosure();
    var symc := refc.symmetricClosure();
    r := symc.transitiveClosure();
}
```

## 9.13 Reductions

### 9.13.1 Reflexive Reduction

The reflexive reduction of a relation is the relation minus the idenitity relation on the same set. It is, to be formal about it, the smallest relation with the same reflexive closure as this (the given) relation.

```
method reflexiveReduction() returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == dom();
    ensures r.rel() == rel() -  set x | x in dom() :: (x,x);
    ensures Valid();
{
    var id := this.identity();
    r := relDifference(id);
}
```

### 9.13.2 Transitive Reduction

TBD

## 9.14 Domain and Range Restriction

The "restriction" of a relation, R, on a set, S, to a subset, X, of S, is a relation X containing the pairs in R both of whose elements are in X. That X is a subset of S is a precondition for calling this method.

```
method restriction(X: set<Stype>) returns (r: binRelOnS<Stype>)
    requires Valid();
    requires X <= dom();
    ensures r.Valid();
    ensures r.dom() == X;
    ensures r.rel() == set x, y | x in dom() && y in dom() &&
        (x, y) in rel() && x in X && y in X :: (x, y);
    ensures Valid();
{
```

```
    r := new binRelOnS(X, set x, y | x in dom() && y in dom() &&
        (x, y) in rel() && x in X && y in X :: (x, y));
}
```

## 9.15 Sequences

A sequence of elements is an ordered collection in which elements can appear zero or more times. In both mathematical writing and in Dafny, sequences are often denoted as lists of elements enclosed in square brackets. The same kinds of elisions (using elipses) can be used as shorthands in quasi-formal mathematical writing as with set notation. For example, in Dafny, a sequence *s := [1, 2, 3, 1]* is a sequence of integers, of length four, the elements of which can be referred to by subscripting. So *s[0]* is *1*, for example, as is *s[3]*.

While at first a sequence might seem like an entirely different kind of thing than a set, in reality a sequence of length, *n*, is best understood, and is formalized, as a binary relation. The domain of the relation is the sequence of natural numbers from *0* to *n-1*. These are the index values. The relation then associates each such index value with the value in that position in the sequence. So in reality, a sequence is a special case of a binary relation, and a binary relation is, as we've seen, just a special case of a set. So here we are, at the end of this chapter, closing the loop with where we started. We have seen that the concept of sets really is a fundamental concept, and a great deal of other machinery is then built as using special cases, including relations, maps, and sequences.

Tuples, too, are basically maps from indices to values. Whereas all the values in a sequence are necessarily of the same type, elements in a tuple can be of different types. Tuples also use the *.n* notation to apply projection functions to tuples. So, again, the value of, say, *("hello", 7).1* is *7* (of type *int*), while the value of *("hello", 7).0* is the string, "hello."

Sequences also support operations not supported for bare sets. These include sequence *concatenation* (addition, in which one sequence is appended to another to make a new sequence comprising the first one followed by the second. In Dafny, concatenation of sequences is done using the *+* operator. Dafny also has operations for accessing the individual elements of sequences, as well as subsequences. A given subsequence is obtained by taking a prefix of a suffix of a sequence. See the Dafny language summary for examples of these and other related operations on lists.

## 9.16 Maps

Fill in.

# BOOLEAN ALGEBRA

As a first stepping stone toward a deeper exploration of deductive logic, we explore the related notion of Boolean *algebra*. Boolean algebra is a mathematical framework for representing and reasoning about truth.

This algebra is akin to ordinary high school algebra, and as such, deals with values, operators, and the syntax and the evaluation of expressions involving values and operators. However, the values in Boolean algebra are limited to the two values in the set, $bool = \{0, 1\}$. They are often written instead as *false* and *true*, respectively. And rather than arithmetic operators such as numeric negation, addition, and subtraction, Boolean algebra defines a set of *Boolean operators*. They are typically given names such as *and*, *or*, and *not*, and they both operate on and yield Boolean values.

In this chapter, we first discuss Boolean algebra in programming, a setting with which the reader is already familar, baesd on a first course in programming. We then take a deeper look at the syntax and semantics of *expressions* in Boolean algebra. We do this by seeing how to use *inductive definitions* and *recursive functions* in the Dafny language to implement an *inductive data type* for representing Boolean expressions and a recursive *evaluation* function that when given any Boolean expression tells whether it is *true* or *false*.

## 10.1 Boolean Algebra in Dafny

All general-purpose programming languages support Boolean algebra. Dafny does so through its *bool* data type and the *operators* associated with it. Having taking a programming course, you will already have been exposed to all of the important ideas. In Dafny, as in many languages, the Boolean values are called *true* and *false* (rather than *1* and *0*).

The Boolean operators are also denoted not by words, such as *or* and *not* but by math-like operators. For example, *!* is the not operator and *||* is the *or* operator.

Here's a (useless) Dafny method that illustrates how Boolean values and operators can be used in Dafny. It presents a method, *BoolOps*, that takes a Boolean value and returns one. The commands within the method body illustrate the use of Boolean constant (literal) values and the unary and binary operators provided by the Dafny language.

```
method BoolOps(a: bool) returns (r: bool)
{
    var t: bool := true;    // explicit type declaration
    var f := false;         // type inferred automatically
    var not := !t;          // negation
    var conj := t && f;     // conjunction, short-circuit evaluation
    var disj := t || f;     // disjunction, short-circuit (sc) evaluation
    var impl := t ==> f;    // implication, right associative, sc from left
    var foll := t <== f;    // follows, left associative, sc from right
    var equv := t <==> t;   // iff, bi-implication
```

```
    return true;            // returning a Boolean value
}
```

The first line assigns the Boolean constant, *true*, to a Boolean variable, *t*, that is explicitly declared to be of type,, *bool*. The second line assigns the Boolean constant, *false*, to *f*, and allows Dafny to infer that the type of *f* must be *bool*, based on the type of value being assigned to it. The third line illustrates the use of the *negation* operator, denoted as *!* in Dafny. Here the negation of *t* is assigned to the new Boolean variable, *not*. The next line illustrates the use of the Boolean *and*, or *conjunction* operator (*&&*). Next is the Boolean *or*, or *disjunction*, operator, (*||*). These should all be familiar.

Implication (*==>*) is a binary operator (taking two Boolean values) that is read as *implies* and that evaluates to false only when the first argument is true and the second one is false, and that evaluates to true otherwise. The *follows* operator (*<==*) swaps the order of the arguments, and evaluates to false if the first argument is false and the second is true, and evaluates to true otherwise. Finally, the *equivalence* operator evaluates to true if both arguments have the same Boolean value, and evaluates to false otherwise. These operators are especially useful in writing assertions in Dafny.

The last line returns the Boolean value true as the result of running this method. Other operations built into Dafny also return Boolean values. Arithmetic comparison operators, such as $<$, are examples. The less than operator, for example, takes two numerical arguments and returns true if the first is strictly less than the second, otherwise it returns false.

## 10.2 Boolean Values

Boolean algebra is an algebra, which is a set of values and of operations that take and return these values. The set of values in Boolean algebra, is just the set containing *0* and *1*.

$$bool = \{0, 1\}.$$

In English that expression just gave a name that we can use, *bool*, to the set containing the values, *0* and *1*. Although these values are written as if they were small natural numbers, you must think of them as elements of a different type. They aren't natural numbers but simply the two values in this other, Boolean, algebra. We could use different symbols to represent these values. In fact, they are often written instead as *false* (for *0*) and *true* (for *1*).The exact symbols we use to represent these values don't really matter. What really makes Boolean algebra what it is are the *operators* defined by Boolean algebra and how they behave.

## 10.3 Boolean Operators

An algebra, again, is a set of values of a particular kind and a set of operators involving that kind of value. Having introduced the set of two values of the Boolean type, let's turn to the *operations* of Boolean algebra.

### 10.3.1 Nullary, Unary, Binary, and n-Ary Operators

The operations of an algebra take zero or more values and return (or reduce to) values of the same kind. Boolean operators, for example, take zero or more Boolean values and reduce to Boolean values. An operator that takes no values (and nevertheless returns a value, as all operators do) is called a *constant*. Each value in the value set of an algebra can be though of as an operator that takes no values.

Such an operator is also called *nullary*. An operator that takes one value is called *unary*; one that takes two, *binary*, and in general, one that takes *n* arguments is called *n-ary* (pronounced "EN-airy").

Having already introduced the constant (*nullary*) values of Boolean algebra, each of the type we have called *bool*, we now introduce the types and behaviors the unary and binary Boolean operators, including each of those supported in Dafny.

## 10.3.2 The Unary Operators of Boolean Algebra

While there are two constants in Boolean algebra, each of type *bool*, there are four unary operators, each of type *bool* → *bool*. This type, which contains an arrow, is a *function* type. It is the type of any function that first takes an argument of type *bool* then reduces to a value of type *bool*. It's easier to read, write, and say in math than in English. In math, the type would be prounced as "bool to bool."

There is more than one value of this function type. For example one such function takes any *bool* argument and always returns the other one. This function is of type "bool to bool", but it is not the same as the function that takes any bool argument and always returns the same value that it got. The type of each function is *bool* → *bool*, but the function *values* are different.

In the programming field, the type of a function is given when it name, its arguments, and return values are declared. This part of a function definition is sometimes called the function *signature*, but it's just as well to think of it as decaring the function *type*. The *body* of the function, usually a sequence of commands enclosed in curly braces, describes its actual behavior, the particular function value associated with the given function name and type.

We know that there is more than one unary Boolean function. So how many are there? To specify the behavior of an operator completely, we have to define what result it returns for each possible combination of its argument values. A unary operator takes only one argument (of the given type). In Boolean algebra, a unary function can thus take one of only two possible values; and it can return only one of two possible result values. The answer to the question is just the number of ways that a function can *map* two argument values to two result values.

And the answer to this question is *four*. A function can map both *0* and *1* to *0*; both *0* and *1* to *1*; *0* to *0* and *1* to *1*; and *0* to *1* and *1* to *0*. There are no other possibilities. An easy-to-understand way to graphically represent the behavior of each of these operations is with a *truth table*.

The rows of a truth table depict all possible combinations of argument values in the columns to the left, and in the last column on the right a truth tables presents the corresponding resulting value. The column headers give names to the argument values and results column headers present expressions using mathematical logic notations that represent how the resulting values are computed.

### Constant False

Here then is a truth table for what we will call the *constant_false* operator, which takes a Boolean argument, either *true* or *false*, and always returns *false*. In our truth tables, we use the symbols, *true* and *false*, instead of *1* and *0*, for consistency with the symbols that most programming languages, including Dafny, use for the Boolean constants.

| $P$ | $false$ |
|---|---|
| true | false |
| false | false |

### Constant True

The *constant_true* operator always returns *true*.

| $P$ | $true$ |
|---|---|
| true | true |
| false | true |

### Identity Function(s)

The Boolean *identity* function takes one Boolean value as an argument and returns that value, whichever it was.

| $P$ | $P$ |
|---|---|
| true | true |
| false | false |

As an aside we will note that *identity functions* taking any type of value are functions that always return exactly the value they took as an argument. What we want to say is that "for any type, $T$, and any value, $t$ of that type, the identity function for type $T$ applied to $t$ always returns $t$ itself. In mathematical logical notation, $\forall T : Type, \forall t : T, id_T(t) = t$. It's clearer in mathematical language than in English! Make sure that both make sense to you now. That is the end of our aside. Now back to Boolean algebra.

### Negation

The Boolean negation, or *not*, operator, is the last of the four unary operators on Boolean values. It returns the value that it was *not* given as an argument. If given *true*, it evaluates to *false*, and if given *false*, to *true*.

The truth table makes this behavior clear. It also introduces the standard notation in mathematical logic for the negation operator, $\neg P$. This expression is pronounced, *not P*. It evaluates to *true* if $P$ is false, and to *false* if $P$ is *true*.

| $P$ | $\neg P$ |
|---|---|
| true | false |
| false | true |
|  |  |

## 10.3.3 Binary Boolean Operators

Now let's consider the binary operators of Boolean algebra. Each takes two Boolean arguments and returns a Boolean value as a result. The type of each such function is written $bool \to bool \to bool$, pronounced "bool to bool to bool." A truth table for a binary Boolean operator will have two columns for arguments, and one on the right for the result of applying the operator being defined to the argument values in the left two columns.

Because binary Boolean operators take two arguments, each with two possible values, there is a total of four possible combinations of argument values: *true* and *true*, *true* and *false*, *false* and *true*, and *false* and *false*. A truth table for a binary operator will thus have four rows.

The rightmost column of a truth table for an operator is really where the action is. It defines what result is returned for each combination of argument values. In a table with four rows, there will be four cells to fill in the final column. In a Boolean algebra there are two ways to fill each cell. And there are exactly *12^4 = 6* ways to do that. We can write them as *0000, 0001, 0010, 0011, 0100, 0101, 0110, 0111, 1000, 1001, 1010, 1011, 1100, 1101, 1110, 1111*. There are thus exactly *16* total binary operators in Boolean algebra.

Mathematicians have given names to all *16*, but in practice we tend to use just a few of them. They are called *and*, *or*, and *not*. The rest can be expressed as combinations these operators. It is common in computer science also to use binary operations called *nand* (for *not and*), *xor* (for *exclusive or*) and *implies*. Here we present truth tables for each of the binary Boolean operators in Dafny.

### And (conjunction)

The *and* operator in Boolean algebra takes two Boolean arguments and returns *true* when both arguments are *true*, and otherwise, *false*.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \land Q$ |
|-----|-----|-------------|
| true | true | true |
| true | false | false |
| false | true | false |
| false | false | false |

### Nand (not and)

The *nand* operator, short for *not and*, returns the opposite value from the *and* operator: *false* if both arguments are *true* and *true* otherwise.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \uparrow Q$ |
|-----|-----|----------------|
| true | true | false |
| true | false | true |
| false | true | true |
| false | false | true |

As an aside, the *nand* operator is especially important for designers of digital logic circuits. The reason is that *every* binary Boolean operator can be simulated by composing *nand* operations in certain patterns. So if we have a billion tiny *nand* circuits (each with two electrical inputs and an output that is off only when both inputs are on), then all we have to do is connect all these little ciruits up in the right patterns to implement very complex Boolean functions. The capability to etch billions of tiny *nand* circuits in silicon and to connect them in complex ways is the heart of the computer revolution. Now back to Boolean algebra.

### Or (disjunction)

The *or*, or *disjunction*, operator evaluates to *false* only if both arguments are *false*, and otherwise to *true*.

It's important to note that it evaluates to *true* if either one or both of its arguments are true. When a dad says to his child, "You can have a candy bar *or* a donut, *he likely doesn't mean \*or* in the sense of *disjunction*. Otherwise the child well educated in logic would surely say, "Thank you, Dad, I'll greatly enjoy having both."

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \lor Q$ |
|-----|-----|------------|
| true | true | true |
| true | false | true |
| false | true | true |
| false | false | false |

### Xor (exclusive or)

What the dad most likely meant by *or* is what in Boolean algebra we call *exclusive or*, written as *xor*. It evalutes to true if either one, but *not both*, of its arguments is true, and to false otherwise.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \oplus Q$ |
|---|---|---|
| true | true | false |
| true | false | true |
| false | true | true |
| false | false | false |

### Nor (not or)

The *nor* operator returns the negation of what the *or* operator applied to the same arguments returns: *xor(b1,b2) = not(or(b1, b2))*. As an aside, like *nand*, the *nor* operator is *universal*, in the sense that it can be composed to with itself in different patterns to simulate the effects of any other binary Boolean operator.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \downarrow Q$ |
|---|---|---|
| true | true | false |
| true | false | false |
| false | true | false |
| false | false | true |

### Implies

The *implies* operator is used to express the idea that if one condition, a premise, is true, another one, the conclusion, must be. So this operator returns true when both arguments are true. If the first argument is false, this operator returns true. It returns false only in the case where the first argument is true and the second is not, because that violates the idea that if the first is true then the second must be.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \rightarrow Q$ |
|---|---|---|
| true | true | true |
| true | false | false |
| false | true | true |
| false | false | true |

### Follows

The *follows* operator reverses the sense of an implication. Rather than being understood to say that truth of the first argument should *lead to* the truth of the second, it says that the truth of the first should *follow from* the truth of the second.

| $P$ | $Q$ | $P \leftarrow Q$ |
|---|---|---|
| true | true | true |
| true | false | true |
| false | true | false |
| false | false | true |

There are other binary Boolean operators. They even have names, though one rarely sees these names used in practice.

## 10.3.4 A Ternary Binary Operator

We can of course define Boolean operators of any arity. As just one example, we introduce a *ternary* (3-ary) Boolean operator. It takes three Boolean values as arguments and returns a Boolean result. It's type is thus ::*bool rightarrow bool rightarrow bool rightarrow bool*. We will call it *ifThenElse_{bool}*.

The way this operator works is that the value of the first argument determines which of the next two arguments values the function will return. If the first argument is *true* then the value of the whole expression is the value of the second argument, otherwise it is the value of the third. So, for example, *ifThenElse_{bool}(true, true, false)* evaluates to true, while *ifThenElse_{bool}(false, true, false)* is false.

It is sometimes helpful to write Boolean expressions involving *n-ary* operators for *n>1* using something other than function application (prefix) notation. So, rather than *and(true,false)*, with the operator in front of the arguments (*prefix* notation), we would typically write *true && false* to mean the same thing. We have first sed a symbol, *&&*, instead of the English word, *and* to name the operator of interest. We have also put the function name (now *&&*) *between* the arguments rather than in front of them. This is called *infix* notation.

With ternary and other operators, it can even make sense to break up the name of the operator and spread its parts across the whole expression. For example, instead of writing, *ifThenElse_{bool}(true, true, false)*, we could write it as *IF true THEN true ELSE false.* Here, the capitalized words all together represent the name of the function applied to the three Boolean arguments in the expression.

As an aside, when we use infix notation, we have to do some extra work, namely to specify the *order of operations*, so that when we write expressions, the meaning is unambiguous. We have to say which operators have higher and lower *precedence*, and whether operators are *left*, *right*, or not associative. In everyday arithmetic, for example, multiplication has higher precedence than addition, so the expression *3 + 4 * 5* is read as *3 + (4 * 5)* even though the + operator comes first in the expression.

Exercise: How many ternary Boolean operations are there? Hint: for an operator with $n$ Boolean arguments there are $2^n$ combinations of input values. This means that there will be $2^n$ rows in its truth table, and so $2^n$ blanks to fill in with Boolean values in the right column. How many ways are there to fill in $2^n$ Boolean values? Express your answer in terms of $n$.

Exercise: Write down the truth table for our Boolean if-then-else operator.

# FORMAL LANGUAGES

In this chapter, we introduce the concept of formal languages. A formal language is a set of expressions and corresponding meanings, where the permitted forms of the expressions and the meaning of each well formed expression is specified with mathematical precision. The ideas are simple and beautiful. We introduce them with a case study of Boolean expressions, starting with a highly simplied language with only two literal value expressions; then extending to a language that adds the usualy Boolean connectives (and, or, not, etc).

## 11.1 Boolean Algebra Revisited

Any introduction to programming will have made it clear that there is an infinite set of Boolean expressions. For example, in Dafny, *true* is a Boolean expression; so are *false*, *true || false*, *(true || false) && (!false)*, and one could keep going on forever.

Boolean *expressions*, as we see here, are a different kind of thing than Boolean *values*. There are only two Boolean values, but there is an infinity of Boolean expressions. The connection is that each such expression has a corresponding Boolean truth value. For example, the expression, *(true || false) && (!false)* has the value, *true*.

The set of valid Boolean expressions is defined by the *syntax* of the Boolean expression language. The sequence of symbols, *(true || false) && (!false)*, is a valid expression in the language, for example, but *)( true false()||) false !&&* is not, just as the sequence of words, "Mary works long hours" is a valid sentence in the English language, but "long works hours Mary" isn't.

The syntax of a language defines the set of valid sentences in the language. The semantics of a language gives a meaning to each valid sentence in the language. In the case of Boolean expressions, the meaning given to each valid "sentence" (expression) is simply the Boolean value that that expression *reduces to*.

As an example of syntax, the *true*, in the statement, *var b := true;* is a valid expression in the language of Boolean expressions, as defined by the *syntaxt* of this language. The semantics of the language associates the Boolean *value*, *true*, with this expression.

You probably just noticed that we used the same symbol, *true*, for both an expression and a value, blurring the distinction between expressions and values. Expressions that directly represent values are called *literal expressions*. Many languages use the usual name for a value as a literal expression, and the semantics of the language then associate each such expression with its corresponding value.

In the semantics of practical formal languages, literal expressions are assigned the values that they name. So the *expression*, *true*, means the *value*, *true*, for example. Similarly, when *3* appears on the right side of an assignment/update statement, such as in *x := 3*, it is an *expression*, a literal expression, that when *evaluated* is taken to *mean* the natural number (that we usually represent as) *3*.

As computer scientists interested in languages and meaning, we can make these concepts of syntax and semantics not only precisely clear but also *runnable*. So let's get started.

In the rest of this chapter, we use the case of Boolean expressions to introduce the concepts of the *syntax* and the *semantics* of *formal languages*. The syntax of a formal language precisely defines a set of *expressions* (sometimes called sentences or formulae). A *semantics* associates a *meaning*, in the form of a *value*, with each expression in the language.

## 11.2 A Very Simple Language of Boolean Expressions

We start by considering a simplified language of Boolean expressions: one with only two literal expressions, for *true* and *false* values, along with several of the usual logical connectives. To make it clear that the literal expressions are not themselves Boolean values but expressions that we will eventually interpret as meaning Boolean values, we will call the literal values in our language not *true* and *false* but *bTrue* and *bFalse*.

### 11.2.1 Syntax: Inductive Data Type Definitions

We can represent the syntax of this language in Dafny using what we call an *inductive data type definition.* A data type defines a set of values. So what we need to define is a data type whose values are all and only the valid expressions in the language. The data type defines the *syntax* of the language by specifying precisely the set of terms that encode syntactically correct expressions in the language. Here we see a key idea in computer science: programs (in this case simplified Boolean expressions) are just data values, too.

So here we go. We need a type with only two values, each one of them representing a valid expression in our language. Here's how we'd write it in Dafny.

```
datatype Bexp =
    bTrue |
    bFalse
```

The definition starts with the *datatype* keyword, followed by the name of the type being defined (*Bexp*, short for Boolean expression) then an equals sign, and finally a list of *constructors* separated by vertical bar characters. The constructors define the ways in which the values of the type (or *terms*) can be created. Each constructor has a and can take optional parameters. Here the names are *bTrue* and *bFalse* and neither takes any parameters.

The only values of an inductive type are those that can be built using the provided constructors. So the language that we have specified thus far has only two values, which we take to be the valid expressions in the language we are specifying, namely *bTrue* and *bFalse*. That is all there is to specifying the *syntax* of our simplified language of Boolean expressions.

### 11.2.2 Semantics: Pattern Matching on Terms

We now specify a semantics for this language. Speaking informally, we want to associate, to each of the expressions in our simple two-term language, a correponding meaning in the form of a Boolean value. We do this here by defining a function that takes an expression (a value of type *bExp*) as an argument and that returns the Boolean *value*: the *meaning* of that expression. In particular, we want a function that returns Dafny's Boolean value *true* for the expression, *bTrue*, and the Boolean value *false* for *bFalse*.

Our implementation of such a function uses a new programming mechanism that you probably haven't seen before, called *pattern matching*. The idea is that when given a term, a Boolean expression in this case, the code will look to see how that term was constructed, and it will behave in different ways depending on the result of that analysis. Here, the code matches on a given term to determine whether it was constructed by the *bTrue* or by the *bFalse* constructor, and it then returns what we want it to return as the corresponding Boolean value. Here's the code in Dafny.

```
function method bEval(e: bExp): bool
{
  match e
  {
      case bTrue => true
      case bFalse => false
  }
}
```

As a shorhand for *Boolean semantic evaluator* we call it *bEval*. It takes an expression (a value of type, *bExp*) and returns a Boolean value. The function implementation uses an important construct that is probably new to most readers: a *match* expression. What a match expression does is to: first determine how a value of an inductive type was buit, namely what constructor was used and what arguments were provided (if any) and then to compute a result for the case at hand.

The match expression starts with the match keyword followed by the variable naming the value being matched. Then within curly braces there is a *case* for each constructor for the type of that value. There are two constructors for the type, *bExp*, so there are two cases. Each case starts with the *case* keyword, then the name of a constructor followed by an argument list if the construtor took parameters. Neither constructor took any parameters, so there is no need to deal with parameters here. The left side thus determines how the value was constructed. Each case has an arrow, $=>$, that is followed by an expression that when evaluated yields the result *for that case*.

The code here can thus be read as saying, first look at the given expression, then determine if it was *bTrue* or *bFalse*. In the first case, return *true*. In the second case, return *false*. That is all there is to defining a semantics for this simple language.

## 11.3 Extending the Language with Boolean Connectives

So far our Boolean language is very uninteresting. There are only two expressions in our language, two literal expressions, and all they mean are their corresponding Boolean values. In this section of this chapter, we see how to explode the situation dramatically by allowing larger expressions to be built from smaller ones and the meanings of larger expressions to be defined in terms of the meanings of their parts. We see the use of true *inductive definitions* and *structural recursions* to define the syntax and semantics of a language with an infinite number of terms.

In this case, these terms are expressions such as *(bTrue and (not bFalse))*. In other words, we extend our language with the usual Boolean connectives. These connectives allow arbitrary expressions to be combined into ever larger expressions, without bound. Then the challenge is to specify a meaning for every such expression. We do that by using recursion over the *structure* of any such term.

### 11.3.1 Inductive Definitions: Building Bigger Expressions from Smaller Ones

The real language of Boolean expressions has many more than two valid expressions, of course. In Dafny's Boolean expression sub-language, for example, one can write not only the literal expressions, *true* and *false*, but also expressions such as *(true || false) && (not false)*.

There is an infinity of such expressions, because given any one or two valid expressions (starting with *true* and *false*) we can always build a bigger expression by combing the two given ones with a Boolean operator. No matter how complex expressions $P$ and $Q$ are, we can, for example, always form the even more complex expressions, *!P*, *P && Q*, and *P || Q*, among others.

How can we extend the syntax of our simplified language so that it specifies the infinity set of well formed expressions in the language of Boolean expressions? The answer is that we need to add some more cosntruc-

tors. In particular, for each Boolean operator (including *and, or*, and *not*), we need a a constructor that takes the right number of smaller expressions as arguments and the builds the right larger expression.

For example, if $P$ and $Q$ are arbitrary "smaller" expressions, we need a consructor to build the expression $P$ *and Q*, a constructor to build the expression, *P or Q*, and one that can build the expressions *not P* and *not Q*. Here then is the induction: some constructors of the *bExp* type will take values of the very type we're defining as parameters. And because we've defined some values as constants, we have some expressions to get started with. Here's how we'd write the code in Dafny.

```
datatype bExp =
    bTrue |
    bFalse |
    bNot (e: bExp) |
    bAnd (e1: bExp, e2: bExp) |
    bOr (e1: bExp, e2: bExp)
```

We've added three new constructors: one corresponding to each of the *operator* in Boolean algebra (to keep things simple, we're dealing with only three of them here). We have named each constructor in a way that makes the connection to the corresponding operator clear.

We also see that these new constructors take parameters. The *bNot* constructor takes a "smaller" expression, *e*, and builds/returns the expression, *bNot e*, which we will interpret as *not e*, or, as we'd write it in Dafny, *!e*. Similarly, given expressions, *e1* and *e2*, the *bAnd* and *bOr* operators construct the expressions *bAnd(e1,e2)* and *bOr(e1,e2)*, respectively, representing *e1 and e2* and *e1 or e2*, respectively, or, in Dafny syntax, *e1 &&e2* and *e1 || e2*.

An expression in our *bExp* language for the Dafny expression *(true || false) and (not false))* would be written as *bAnd( (bOr (bTrue, bFalse)), (bNot bFalse))*. Writing complex expressions like this in a single line of code can get awkward, to we could also structure the code like this:

```
var T: bExp := bTrue;
var F:      := bFalse;
var P:      := bOr ( T,  F );
var Q       := bNot ( F );
var R       := bAnd ( P, Q );
```

## 11.3.2 Structural Recursion: The Meanings of Wholes from the Meanings of Parts

The remaining question, then, is how to give meanings to each of the expressions in the infinite set of expressions that can be built by finite numbers of applications of the constructor of our extended *bExp* type? When we had only two values in the type, it was easy to write a function that returned the right meaning-value for each of the two cases. We can't possibly write a separate case, though, for each of an infinite number of expressions. The solution lies again in the realm of recursive functions.

Such a function will simply do mechanically what you the reader would do if presented with a complex Boolean expression to evaluate. You first figure out what operator was applied to what smaller expression or expressions. You then evaluate those expressions to get values for them. And finally you apply the Boolean operator to those values to get a result.

Take the expression, *(true || false) and (not false))*, which in our language is expressed by the term, *bAnd( (bOr (bTrue, bFalse)), (bNot bFalse))*. First we identify the *constructor* that was used to build the expression In this case it's the constructor corresponding to the *and* operator: *&&* in the Dafny expression and the *bAnd* in our own expression language. What we then do depends on what case has occured.

In the case at hand, we are looking at the constructor for the *and* operator. It took two smaller expressions as arguments. To enable the precise expression of the return result, ew given temporary names to the argument

values that were passed to the constructor. We can call them *e1* and *e2*, for example. sub-expressions that the operator was applied to.

In this case, *e1* would be *(true || false)* and *e2* would be *(not false)*. To compute the value of the whole expression, we then obtain Boolean values for each of *e1* and *e2* and then combine them using the Boolean *and* operator.

The secret is that we get the values for *e1* and *e2* by the very same means: recursively! Within the evaluation of the overall Boolean expression, we thus recursively evaluate the subexpressions. Let's work through the recursive evaluation of *e1*. It was built using the *bOr* constructor. That constructor took two arguments, and they were, in this instance, the literal expressions, *bTrue* and *bFalse*. To obtain an overall result, we recursively evaluate each of these expressions and then combine the result using the Boolean *or* operator. Let's look at the recursive evaluation of the *bTrue* expression. It just evaluates to the Boolean value, *true* with no further recursion, so we're done with that. The *bFalse* evaluates to *false*. These two values are then combined using *or* resulting in a value of *true* for *eq*. A similarly recursive process produces the value, *true*, for *e2*. (Reason through the details yourself!) And finally the two Boolean values, *true* and *true* are combined using Boolean *and*, and a value for the overall expression is thus computed and returned.

Here's the Dafny code.

```
function method bEval(e: bExp): (r: bool)
{
    match e
    {
        case bTrue => true
        case bFase => false
        case bNot(e: bExp) => !bEval(e)
        case bAnd(e1, e2) => bEval(e1) && bEval(e2)
        case bOrEe1, e2) =>  bEval(e1) || bEval(e2)
    }
}
```

This code extends our simpler example by adding three cases, one for each of the new constructor. These constructors took smaller expression values as arguments, so the corresponding cases have used parameter lists to temporarily give names (*e1*, *e2*, etc.) to the arguments that were given when the constructor was orginally used. These names are then used to write the expressions on the right sides of the arrows, to compute the final results.

These result-computing expressions use recursive evalation of the constitute subexpressions to obtain their meanings (actual Boolean values in Dafny) which they then combine using actual Dafny Boolean operators to produce final results.

The meaning (Boolean value) of any of the infinite number of Boolean expressions in the Boolean expression language defined by our syntax (or *grammar*) can be found by a simple application of our *bEval* function. To compute the value of *R*, above, for example, we just run *bEval(R)*. For this *R*, this function will without any doubt return the intended result, *true*.

## 11.4 Formal Languages

Formal languages are sets of well formed expressions with precisely specified syntaxes and semantics. Programming languages are formal languages. Expressions in these languages are programs. The syntax of a programming language specified what forms a program can take. The semantics of a programming language defines the computation that any syntactically correct program describes. At the heart of a semantics for a programming language is the specification, possibly in the form of an implementation, of a *relation* associating programs, the input values they receive, and the output values they produce, if any, when given those inputs.

Logics are formal languages, too. We have now seen how to precisely specify, and indeed implement, both the syntax and the semantics of one such logic, namely propositional logic. This logic is isomorphic in syntax and semantics to the language of Boolean expressions with variables. We used an *inductive definition* of a type to specify and implement the syntax, and a *structural recursion* to specify and to implement the semantics, of our version of propositional logic.

In Dafny, we have also seen how to *use* first-order predicate logic to write specifications. Indeed Dafny brings together three formal languages in one: a language of pure functional programs, which can be use to write both specifications and implementations; a language of imperative programs, which can be used to write efficient code; and first-order predicate logic for writing specifications. This logic allows us to write propositions that constrain and relate the states of imperative programs: e.g., to specify that if a program is run in a state that satisfies a given pre-condition, and if it terminates, that it will terminate in a state that satisfies a given post-condition.

In other words, the semantics of programs specify how programs define relations on states. A given state pair *(S, T)* is in the relation specified by a program *P* if whenever *S* satisfies the pre-condition for *P*, running *P* with the input *S* can produce *T* as a result.

Syntax defines legal expressions. Semantics give each legal expression a meaning. Programming languages and logics are formal languages. The meaning of a program is a computation, understood (at least partly) in terms of a relation on states.

The meaning of a logical proposition, on the other hand, is a mapping from interpretations to truth values. Given a proposition, and then given an interpretation, a proposition purports to describe a state of affairs that holds in that interpetation. If that state of affairs can be shown to hold, then the proposition can be judged to be true. There are many kinds of logic. We've implemented a syntax and semantics for proposition logic. We've used first-order predicate logic extensively to write specifications, which Dafny verifies (mostly) automatically. Going forward, we will take a deeper dive into first-order predicate logic, and then, ultimately, into the higher-order logic of a modern *proof assistant*. Even more interesting things are coming soon.

# PROPOSITIONAL LOGIC

Here is a proposition: "Tom's mother is Mary." A proposition asserts that a particular *state of affairs* holds in some particular *domain of discourse*. The domain in this case would be some family unit; and the state of affairs that is asserted to prevail is that Mary is Tom's Mom.

Whether such a proposition can be *judged* to be *true* is another matter. If the domain of discourse (or just *domain*) were that of a family in which there really are people, Tom and Mary, and in that family unity Mary really is the mother of Tom, then this proposition could be judged to be true. However, if such a state of affairs did not hold in that family unity, then the proposition would still be a fine proposition, but it could not be judged to be true (and indeed could be judged to be false).

In place of the phrase "domain of discourse" we could also use the word, "world." In general, the truth of a proposition depends on the world in which it is evaluated. There are some proposition that are true in every world, e.g., "zero equals zero;" some that are not true in any world, e.g., "zero equals one;" and many where the truth of the proposition depends on the world in which it is evaluated, e.g., "Mary is Tom's mother."

Logic is the discipline that studies such issues: what constitutes a valid proposition, and when can we judge a proposition to be true? The rest of this chapter introduces logic, in general, and what we call propositional logic, in particular. Proposition logic is a simple but useful logic that is very closely related to Boolean algebra. If you understood the material on Boolean algebra, the transition to this chapter should be very easy.

## 12.1 Propositional and Predicate Logic

The proposition, *Tom's mother is Mary*, is simple. It could even be represented as a single variable, let's call it *M*. In what we call propositional logic, we generally represent propositions as variables in this manner. Similarly, a logical variable, *F*, could represent the proposition, *Tom's father is Ernst*. We could then *construct* a larger proposition by composing these two propositions into a larger one under the logical connective called *and*. The result would be the proposition, *Toms' mother is Mary and Tom's father is Ernst*. We could of course write this more concisely as *M and F*, or, in a more mathematical notation, $M \wedge F$.

Now we ask, what is the truth value of this larger proposition? To determine the answer, we conjoin the truth values of the constituent propositions. The meaning of the larger proposition is determined by (1) the meanings of its smaller parts, and (2) the logical connective that composes them into a larger proposition. For example, if it's true that Tom's mother is Mary and it's also true that Tom's father is Ernst, then the truth of the compound conjuction is *true and true*, which is true. Such a logic of propositionsm their compositions into larger propositions using connectives such as *and*, *or*, and *not*, and this compositional way of determining the truth of propositions, is called *propositional logic*.

By contrast, the proposition, "every person has a mother" (or to put it more formally, $\forall p \in Persons, \exists m \in Persons, motherOf(p, m)$), belongs to a richer logic. Here, *motherOf(p, m)* is a *predicate on two values*. It stands for the family of propositions, *the mother of p is m*, where *p* and *m* are variables that range over the

set of people in the given domain of discourse. The overall proposition thus asserts that, for *every* person, *p* in the domain, there is a person, *m*, such that *m* is the mother of *p*.

The *motherOf(p,m)* construct is a *parameterized proposition*, which, again, we call a *predicate*. You can think of it as a function that takes two values, *p* and *m*, and that returns a proposition *about those particular values*. A predicate thus represents not a just one proposition but a whole *family* of propositions, one for each pair of parameter values. Any particular proposition of this form might be true or false depending on the domain of discourse. If *m* really is the mother of *p* (in the assumed domain), then *motherOf(p,m)* can be judged to be true (for that domain), and otherwise not.

Another way to look at a predicate is that it *picks out* a subset of *(p,m)* pairs, namely all and only those for which *motherOf(p,m)* is true. A predicate thus specifies a relation, here a binary relation, namely the *motherOf* relation on the set of people in the domain of discourse.

This richer logic, called *predicate logic*, (1) allows variables, such as *p* and *m*, to range over sets of objects (rather that just over Boolean values), (2) supports the expression predicates involving elements of such sets, and (3) provides botg universal and existential quantifiers (*for all* and *there exists*, respectively). As we will see in a later chapter, a predicate logic also allows the definition and use of functions taking arguments in the domain to identify other objects in the domain. So, for example, a function, *theMotherOf*, might be used to identify *Mary* as *theMotherOf(Tom)*. Note that when a function is applied to domain values, the result is another domain value, whereas when a predicate is applied to domain values, the result is a proposition about those value.

Predicate logic is the logic of everyday mathematics and computer science. It is, among other things, the logic Dafny provides for writing specifications. As an example, consider our specification of what it means for a function, *R*, with domain, *D*, and codomain, *C*, to be surjective: $\forall c \in C, \exists d \in D, (d, c) \in R$. In Dafny, we would (and did) write this as, *forall c :: c in codom() ==> exists d :: d in dom() && (d,c) in rel().* Dafny is thus a specification and verification system based on *predicate logic*. We've been using it all along!

One of the main goals of this course up to now has been to get you reading, writing, and seeing the utility of predicate logic. Far from being an irrelevancy, it is one of the pillars of computer science. It is a fundamental tool for specifying and reasoning about software. It is also central to artificial intelligence (AI), to combinatorial optimization (e.g., for finding good travel routes), in the analysis of algorithms, in digital circuit design, and in many other areas of computer science, not to mention mathematics and mathematical fields such as economics.

Going forward, one of our main goals is to understand predicate logic in greater depth, including its syntax (what kinds of expressions can you write in predicate logic?) its semantics (when are expressions in predicate logic *true?*), and how to show that given expressions are true.

In this chapter, which beings Part II of this set of notes, we start our exploration of predicate logic and proof by first exploring the simpler case of *propositional* logic. To begin, in the next section, we address the basic question, what is *a logic*, in the first place?

## 12.2 What is a Logic?

A logic is (1) a *formal language* of *propositions* along with (2) principles for reasoning about whether any given proposition can be judged to be *true* or not. A logic has a *syntax*, which is a set of mathematically (formally) specified rules that precisely define the set of well formed propositions (or *well formed formulae, or wffs*) in the language. A logic also has a *semantics*, which is a set of formal rules for reasoning about whether a given proposition can be judged to be true or not.

In the last chapter, on Boolean algebra, we already saw what amounts to a simplified version of propositional logic, with both a syntax and a semantics! The syntax of our Boolean expression language is given by the inductive *bExp* type. It provides a set of constructors, which are just the rules for building valid expressions, with an implicit assumption that the valid expressions in the language are all and only those that can be built

using the provided constructors. The syntax is compositional, in that smaller expressions can be composed into ever larger ones, up to arbitrarily large (but always still finite) sizes.

The semantics of the simplified logic is then defined by a *semantic evaluation* function, that takes *any* valid expression in the language as an argument and that returns a Boolean value indicating whether the given expression is (can be judged to be) true or not. The semantics is also compositional in that the truth of a composed proposition is defined recursively in terms of (1) the truth values of its constituent propositions, and (2) the meaning of the connector that was used to compose them. The recursive structure of semantic evaluation exactly mirrors the inductive definition of the syntax.

## 12.3 Propositional Logic

We now introduce propositional logic. The syntax of propositional logic is basically that of our Boolean expression language with the crucial addition of propositional *variable expressions.* Examples of variable expressions include *M* and *F* in our example at the start of this chapter. So, for example, in addition to being able to write expressions such as *pAnd(pTrue,pFalse)*, we can write *pAnd(M,F)*, where *M* and *F* are proposition variables that can have *true* or *false* as their values.

As for semantics, propositional variables thus have Boolean values. To evaluate a proposition in propositional logic, we thus ascertain the Boolean value of each variable appearing in the proposition and then proceed to evaluate the result just as we did with Boolean expression evaluation in the last chapter. For example, if *M* is *true* and *F* is *true*, then to evaluate *M and F*, we first evaluate each of *M* and *F* individually, reducing the proposition to *true and true.* We then reduce that expression using the rules for Boolean algebra. The result in this case is, of course, just *true.*

The one complication, then, is that, to evaluate a proposition that includes variables, our semantic evaluation function needs to have a way to look up the Boolean value of each variable in the expression to be evaluated. Our semantic evaluator needs a function, which could be represented as a *map*, for example, from propositional variables such as *M* and *F* to Boolean values. Logicians call such a function an *interpretation.* Programming language designers sometimes call it an *environment.* To evaluate a variable expression, the evaluator will just look up its value in the given intepretation and will otherwise proceed as in the last chapter.

## 12.4 Syntax

A logic provides a *formal language* in which propositions (truth statements) are expressed. By a formal language, we mean a (usually infinite) set of valid expressions in the language. For example, the language of Boolean expressions includes the expression *true and false* but not *and or true not.*

When the set of valid expressions in a language is infinite in size, it becomes impossible to define the language by simply listing all valid expressions. Instead, the set of valid expressions is usually defined *inductively* by a *grammar.* A grammar defines a set of elementary expressions along with a set of rules for forming ever larger expressions from ones already known to be in the language. We also call the grammar for a formal language its *syntax.*

The syntax of proposition logic is very simple. First, (with details that vary among presentations of propositional logic), it accepts two *literal values*, usually called *true* and *false*, as expressions. Here we will call these values *pFalse* and *pTrue* to emphasize that these are *expressions* that we will eventually *interpret* as having particular Boolean values (namely *false* and *true*, respectively).

Second, propositional logic assumes an infinite set of *propositional variables*, each represents a proposition, and each on its own a valid expression. For example, the variable, *X*, might represent the basic proposition, "It is raining outside," and *Y*, that "The streets are wet." Such variables should be understood as being

equated with basic propositions. Instead of the identifier, *X*, one might just as well have used the identifier, *it_is_raining_outside*, and for *Y*, the identifier, *the_streets_are_wet*.

Finally, in addition to literal values and propositional variables, propositional logic provides the basic Boolean connectives to build larger propositions from smaller ones. So, for example, *X and Y*, *X or Y*, and *not X* are propositions constructed by the use of these *logical connectives.* So is *(X or Y) and (not X)*. (Note that here we have included parentheses to indicate grouping. We will gloss over the parentheses as part of the syntax of propositional logic.)

We have thus defined the entire syntax of propositional logic. We can be more precise about the grammar, or syntax, of the language by giving a more formal set of rules for forming expressions.

```
Expr        := Literal | Variable | Compound
Literal     := pFalse | pTrue
Variable    := X | Y | Z | ...
Compound    := Not Expr | And Expr Expr | Or Expr Expr
```

This kind of specification of a grammar, or syntax, is said to be in *Backus-Naur Form" or BNF, after the names of two researchers who were instrumental in developing the theory of programming languages. (Every programming language has such a grammar.)

This particular BNF grammar reads as follows. A legal expression is either a literal expression, a variable expression, or a compound expression. A literal expression, in turn, is either *pTrue* or *pFalse*. (Recall that these are not Boolean values but Boolean *expressions* that *evaluate* to Boolean values.) A variable expression is X, Y, Z, or any another variable letter one might wish to employ. Finally, if one already has an expression or two, one can form a larger expression by putting the *Not* connective in front of one, or an *And* or *Or* connective in front of two expressions. That is the entire grammar of propositional logic. (Some presentations of propositional logic leave out the literal expressions, *pTrue* and *pFalse*.)

Here's the corresponding completely formal code in Dafny. First, to represent *variables*, we define a datatype called *propVar*, with a single constructor called *mkPropVar*, that takes a single argument, *name*, of type *string*. Examples of variable objects of this type thus include *mkPropVar("M")* and *mkPropVar("F")*. Two variables of this type are equal if and only if their string arguments are equal.

```
datatype propVar = mkPropVar(name: string)
```

With that, we can now give a Dafny specification of the syntax of our version of propositional logic. It's exactly the same as the syntax of Boolean expressions from the last chapter but for the addition of one new kind of expression, a *variable expression*, which is built using the *pVar* constructor applied to a *variable* (that is, a value of type *propVar*).

```
datatype prop =
   pTrue |
   pFalse |
   pVar (v: propVar) |
   pNot (e: prop) |
   pAnd (e1: prop, e2: prop) |
   pOr (e1: prop, e2: prop) |
   pImpl (e1: prop, e2: prop)
```

This kind of definition is what we call an *inductive definition.* The set of legal expressions is defined in part in terms of expressions! It's like recursion. What makes it work is that one starts with some non-recursive *base* values, and then the inductive rules allow them to be put together into ever larger expressions. Thinking in reverse, one can always take a large expression and break it into parts, using recursion until base cases are reached.

Note that we distinguish *variables* (values of type *propVar*) from *variable expressions* (values of type *prop*). This approach makes it easy to represent an interpretation as a map from variables (of type *propVar*) to

Boolean values.

## 12.5 Semantics of Propositional Logic

Second, a logic defines a of what is required for a proposition to be judged true. This definition constitutes what we call the *semantics* of the language. The semantics of a logic given *meaning* to what are otherwise abstract mathematical expressions; and do so in particular by explaining when a given proposition is true or not true.

The semantics of propositional logic are simple. They just generalize the semantics of our Boolean expression language by also supporting the evaluation of propositional variable expressions.

The literal expressions, *pTrue* and *pFalse* still evaluate to Boolean *true* and *false*, respectively. A variable can have either the value, *true* or the value, *false*. To evaluate the value of any particular variable expression, one obtains the underlying variable and looks up its Boolean values in a given *interpretation*. Recall that an interpretation is just a *map* (or *function*) from variables to Boolean values. Finally, an an expression of the form *pAnd e1 e2*, *pOr e1 e2*, or *pNot e* are evaluated just as they were in the last chapter, by recursively evaluating the sub-expressions and combining the values using the Boolean operator corresponding to the constructor that was used to build the compound expression. Evaluation of a larger expression is done by recursively evaluating smaller expressions until the base cases of *pTrue* and *pFalse* are reached.

Here's the Dafny code for semantic evaluation of any proposition (an expression object of type *prop*) in our propositional logic language.

```
function method pEval(e: prop, i: pInterpretation): (r: bool)
    requires forall v :: v in getVarsInProp(e) ==> v in i
 {
    match e
    {
        case pTrue => true
        case pFalse => false
        case pVar(v: propVar) => pVarValue(v,i)
        case pNot(e1: prop) => !pEval(e1,i)
        case pAnd(e1, e2) => pEval(e1,i) && pEval(e2, i)
        case pOr(e1, e2) =>  pEval(e1, i) || pEval(e2, i)
        case pImpl(e1, e2) => pEval(e1, i) ==> pEval(e2, i)
    }
 }
```

Our semantic evaluation function is called *pEval*. It takes a proposition expression, $e$, and an interpration, *i*, which is just a map from variables (of type *propVar*) to Boolean values, i.e., a value of type *map<propVar,bool>*. The precondition is stated using an auxiliary function we've define; and overall it simply requires that there be a value defined in the map for any variable that appears in the given expression, *e*. Finally, the evaluation procedure is just as it was for our language of Boolean algebra, but now there is one more rule: to evaluate a variable expression (built using the *propVar* constructor), we just look up its value in the given map (interpretation).

Exercise: Write a valid proposition using our Dafny implementation to represent the assertion that *either it is not raining outside or the streets are wet.* Use only one logical connective.

Exercise: Extend the syntax above to include an *implies* connective and express the proposition from the previous exercise using it. (Okay, the code already implements it, so this exercise is obsolete.)

## 12.6 Inference Rules for Propositional Logic

Finally, a logic provides a set of *inference rules* for deriving new propositions (conclusions) from given propositions (premises) in ways that guarantee that if the premises are true, the conclusions will be, too. The crucial characteristic of inference rules is that although they are guarantee to *preserve meaning* (in the form of truthfulness of propositions), they work entirely at the level of syntax.

Each such rule basically says, "if you have a set of premises with certain syntactic structures, then you can combine them in ways to derive new propositions with absolute certainty that, if the premises are true, the conclusion will be, too. Inference rules are thus rules for transforming *syntax* in ways that are *semantically sound.* They allow one to derive *meaningful* new conclusions without ever having to think about meaning at all.

These ideas bring us to the concept of *proofs* in deductive logic. If one is given a proposition that is not yet known to be true or not, and a set of premises known or assumed to be true, a proof is simply a set of applications of availabile inference rules in a way that, step by step, connects the premises *syntactically* to the conclusion.

A key property of such a proof is that it can be checked mechanically, without any consideration of *semantics* (meaning) to determine if it is a valid proof or not. It is a simple matter at each step to check whether a given inference rule was applied correctly to convert one collection of propositions into another, and thus to check whether *chains* of inference rules properly connect premises to conclusions.

For example, a simple inference rule called *modus ponens* states that if $P$ and $Q$ are propositions and if one has as premises that (1) $P$ is true\*, and (2) *if $P$ is true then $Q$ is true*, then one can deduce that $Q$ *is true.* This rule is applicable *no matter what* the propositions $P$ and $Q$ are. It thus encodes a general rule of sound reasoning.

A logic enables *semantically sound* "reasoning" by way of syntactic transformations alone. And a wonderful thing about syntax is that it is relatively easy to mechanize with software. What this means is that we can implement systems that can reasoning *meaningfully* based on syntactic transformation rules alone.

Note: Modern logic initially developed by Frege as a " formula language for pure though,t modeled on that of arithmetic," and later elaborated by Russel, Peano, and others as a language in which, in turn, to establish completely formal foundations for mathematics.

## 12.7 Using Logic in Practice

To use a logic for practical purposes, one must (1) understand how to represent states of affairs in the domain of discourse of interest as expressions in the logical language of the logic, and (2) havee some means of evaluating the truth values of the resulting expressions. In Dafny, one must understand the logical language in which assertions and related constructs (such as pre- and post-conditions) are written.

In many cases–the magic of an automated verifier such as Dafny–a programmer can rely on Dafny to evaluate truth values of assertions automatically. When Dafny is unable to verify the truth of a claim, however, the programmer will also have to understand something about the way that truth is ascertained in the logic, so as to be able to provide Dafny with the help it might need to be able to complete its verification task.

In this chapter, we take a major step toward understanding logic and proofs by introducing the language *propositional logic* and a means of evaluating the truth of any sentence in the language. The language is closely related to the language of Boolean expressions introduced in the last chapter. The main syntactic difference is that we add a notion of *propositional variables*. We will defined the semantics of this language by introducing the concept of an *interpration*, which specifies a Boolean truth value for each such variable. We will then evaluate the truth value of an expression *given an interpration for the proposition variables in*

*that expression* by replacing each of the variables with its corresponding Boolean value and then using our Boolean expression evaluator to determing the truth value of the expression.

We will also note that this formulation gives rise to an important new set of logical problems. Given an expression, does there exist an interpretation that makes that expression evaluate to true? Do all interpretations make it value to true? Can it be there there are no interpretations that make a given expression evaluate to true? And, finally, are there *efficient* algorithms for *deciding* whether or not the answer to any such question is yes or no.

## 12.8 Implementing Propositional Logic

The rest of this chapter illustrates and further develops these ideas using Boolean algebra, and a language of Boolean expressions, as a case study in precise definition of the syntax (expression structure) and semantics (expression evaluation) of a simple formal language: of Boolean expressions containing Boolean variables.

To illustrate the potential utility of this language and its semantics we will define three related *decision problems*. A decision problem is a *kind* of problem for which there is an algorithm that can solve any instance of the problem. The three decision problems we will study start with a Boolean expression, one that can contain variables, and ask where there is an assignment of *true* and *false* values to the variables in the expression to make the overall expression evaluate to *true*.

Here's an example. Suppose you're given the Boolean expression, $(P \lor Q) \land (\neg R)$. The top-level operator is *and*. The whole expression thus evaluates to *true* if and only if both subexpressions do: $(P \lor Q)$ and $\land(\neg R)$, respectively. The first, $(P \lor Q)$, evaluates to *true* if either of the variables, $P$ and $Q$, are set to true. The second evaluates to true if and only if the variable $R$ is false. There are thus settings of the variables that make the formula true. In each of them, $R$ is *false*, and either or both of $P$ and $Q$ are set to true.

Given a Boolean expression with variables, an *interpretation* for that expression is a binding of the variables in that expression to corresponding Boolean values. A Boolean expression with no variables is like a proposition: it is true or false on its own. An expression with one or more variables will be true or false depending on how the variables are used in the expression.

An interpretation that makes such a formula true is called a *model*. The problem of finding a model is called, naturally enough, the model finding problem, and the problem of finding *all* models that make a Boolean expression true, the *model enumeration* or *model counting* problem.

The first major *decision problem* that we identify is, for any given Boolean expression, to determine whether it is *satisfiable*. That is, is there at least one interpretation (assignment of truth values to the variables in the expression that makes the expression evaluate to *true*? We saw, for example, that the expression, $(P \lor Q) \land (\neg R)$ is satifiable, and, moreover, that $\{(P, true), (Q, false), (R, false)\}$ is a (one of three) interpretations that makes the expression true.

Such an interpretation is called a *model*. The problem of finding a model (if there is one), and thereby showing that an expression is satisfiable, is naturally enough called the* model finding* problem.

A second problem is to determine whether a Boolean expression is *valid*. An expression is valid if *every* interpretation makes the expression true. For example, the Boolean expression $P \lor \neg P$ is always true. If $P$ is set to true, the formula becomes $true \lor false$. If $P$ is set to false, the formula is then $true \lor false$. Those are the only two interpretations and under either of them, the resulting expression evaluates to true.

A third related problem is to determine whether a Boolean expression is it *unsatisfiable*? This case occurs when there is *no* combination of variable values makes the expression true. The expression $P \land \neg P$ is unsatisfiable, for example. There is no value of $P$ (either *true* or *false*) that makes the resulting formula true.

These decision problems are all solvable. There are algorithms that in a finite number of steps can determine answers to all of them. In the worst case, one need only look at all possible combinations of true and false

values for each of the (finite number of) variables in an expression. If there are $n$ variables, that is at most $2^n$ combinations of such values. Checking the value of an expression for each of these interpretations will determine whether it's satisfiable, unsatisfiable, or valid. In this chapter, we will see how these ideas can be translated into runnable code.

The much more interesting question is whether there is a fundamentally more efficient approach than checking all possible interpretations: an approach with a cost that increases *exponentially* in the number of variables in an expression. This is the greatest open question in all of computer science, and one of the greatest open questions in all of mathematics.

So let's see how it all works. The rest of this chapter first defines a *syntax* for Boolean expressions. Then it defines a *semantics* in the form of a procedure for *evaluating* any given Boolean expression given a corresponding *interpretation*, i.e., a mapping from variables in the expression to corresponding Boolean values. Next we define a procedure that, for any given set of Boolean variables, computes and returns a list of *all* interpretations. We also define a procedure that, given any Boolean expression returns the set of variables in the expression. For ths set we calculate the set of all interpretations. Finally, by evaluating the expression on each such interpretation, we decide whether the expression is satisfiable, unsatisfiable, or valid.

Along the way, we will meet *inductive definitions* as a fundamental approach to concisely specifying languages with a potentially infinite number of expressions, and the *match* expression for dealing with values of inductively defined types. We will also see uses of several of Dafny's built-in abstract data types, including sets, sequences, and maps. So let's get going.

## 12.8.1 Syntax

Any basic introduction to programming will have made it clear that there is an infinite set of Boolean expressions. First, we can take the Boolean values, *true* and *false*, as *literal* expressions. Second, we can take *Boolean variables*, such as *P* or *Q*, as a Boolean *variable* expressions. Finally, we take take each Boolean operator as having an associated expression constructor that takes one or more smaller *Boolean expressions* as arguments.

Notice that in this last step, we introduced the idea of constructing larger Boolean expressions out of smaller ones. We are thus defining the set of all Boolean expressions *inductively*. For example, if *P* is a Boolean variable expression, then we can construct a valid larger expression, $P \land true$ to express the conjunction of the value of *P* (whatever it might be( with the value, *true*. From here we could build the larger expression, *P lor (P land true)*, and so on, ad infinitum.

We define an infinite set of "variables" as terms of the form mkVar(s), where s, astring, represents the name of the variable. The term mkVar("P"), for example, is our way of writing "the var named P."

```
datatype Bvar = mkVar(name: string)
```

Here's the definition of the *syntax*:

```
datatype Bexp =
    litExp (b: bool) |
    varExp (v: Bvar) |
    notExp (e: Bexp) |
    andExp (e1: Bexp, e2: Bexp) |
    orExp (e1: Bexp, e2: Bexp)
```

Boolean expresions, as we've defined them here, are like propositions with paramaters. The parameters are the variables. Depending on how we assign them *true* and *false* values, the overall proposition might be rendered true or false.

## 12.8.2 Interpretation

Evaluate a Boolean expression in a given environment. The recursive structure of this algorithm reflects the inductive structure of the expressions we've defined.

```
type interp = map<Bvar, bool>
```

## 12.8.3 Semantics

```
function method Beval(e: Bexp, i: interp): (r: bool)
{
    match e
    {
        case litExp(b: bool) => b
        case varExp(v: Bvar) => lookup(v,i)
        case notExp(e1: Bexp) => !Beval(e1,i)
        case andExp(e1, e2) => Beval(e1,i) && Beval(e2, i)
        case orExp(e1, e2) =>  Beval(e1, i) || Beval(e2, i)
    }
}
```

}

Lookup value of given variable, v, in a given interpretation, i. If there is not value for v in i, then just return false. This is not a great design, in that a return of false could mean one of two things, and it's ambiguous: either the value of the variable really is false, or it's undefined. For now, though, it's good enough to illustate our main points.

```
function method lookup(v: Bvar, i: interp): bool
{
    if (v in i) then i[v]
    else false
}
```

Now that we know the basic values and operations of Boolean algebra, we can be precise about the forms of and valid ways of transforming *Boolean expressions.* For example, we've seen that we can transform the expression *true and true* into *true.* But what about *true and ((false xor true) or (not (false implies true)))*?

To make sense of such expressions, we need to define what it means for one to be well formed, and how to evaluate any such well formed expressions by transforming it repeatedly into simpler forms but in ways that preserve its meaning until we reach a single Boolean value.

## 12.8.4 Models

# 12. SATISFIABILITY

We can now characterize the most important *open question* (unsolved mathematical problem) in computer science. Is there an *efficient* algorithm for determining whether any given Boolean formula is satisfiable?

whether there is a combination of Boolean variable values that makes any given Boolean expression true is the most important unsolved problem in computer science. We currently do not know of a solution that with runtime complexity that is better than exponential the number of variables in an expression. It's easy to determine whether an assignment of values to variables does the trick: just evaluate the expression with those values for the variables. But *finding* such a combination today requires, for the hardest of these problems, trying all :math:`2^n` combinations of Boolean values for *n* variables.

At the same time, we do not know that there is *not* a more efficient algorithm. Many experts would bet that there isn't one, but until we know for sure, there is a tantalizing possibility that someone someday will find an *efficient decision procedure* for Boolean satisfiability.

To close this exploration of computational complexity theory, we'll just note that we solved an instances of another related problem: not only to determine whether there is at least one (whether *there exists*) at least one combination of variable values that makes the expression true, but further determining how many different ways there are to do it.

Researchers and advanced practitioners of logic and computation sometimes use the word *model* to refer to a combination of variable values that makes an expression true. The problem of finding a Boolean expression that *satisfies* a Boolean formula is thus somtetimes called the *model finding* problem. By contrast, the problem of determining how many ways there are to satisfy a Boolean expression is called the *model counting* problem.

Solutions to these problems have a vast array of practical uses. As one still example, many logic puzzles can be represented as Boolean expressions, and a model finder can be used to determine whether there are any "solutions", if so, what one solution is.

## 13.1 Interpretations for a Proposition

This method returns a sequence of all possible interpretations for a given proposition. It does it by getting a sequence of all the variables in the expression and by then calling a helper function, truth_table_inputs_for_vars, which does most of the work.

```
method truth_table_inputs_for_prop(p: prop)
    returns (result: seq<pInterpretation>)
    ensures forall v :: v in getVarsInProp(p) ==>
                forall i :: 0 <= i < |result| ==>
                    v in result[i];      // kjs
{
    var vs := seqVarsInProp(p);
```

```
        result := truth_table_inputs_for_vars(vs);
}
```

## 13.2 Interpretations for a Sequence of Propositions

This method returns a sequence of all possible interpretations for a given sequence of Boolean variables, in
increasing order from all false to all true. Each interpretation is a map from each of the variables to that
variable's bool value under the given interpretation. In other words, this method returns the "input" parts
of each row of a truth table for the given propositional variables.

```
method truth_table_inputs_for_vars(vs: seq<propVar>)
    returns (result: seq<pInterpretation>)
    ensures forall i :: 0 <= i < |result| ==>   // kjs
        forall v :: v in vs ==> v in result[i];
{
    result := [];
    var interp := all_false_interp(vs);
    var i: nat := 0;
    var n := pow2(|vs|);
    while (i < n)
        invariant i <= n;
        invariant |result| == i;
        invariant forall v :: v in vs ==> v in interp;
        invariant
            forall k :: 0 <= k < i ==>
                forall v :: v in vs ==>
                    v in result[k];


    {
        result := result + [interp];
        interp := next_interp(vs, interp);
        i := i + 1;
    }
}
```

## 13.3 The All-False Interpetation

Return an interpretation for the variables in the sequence vs such that every variable maps to false.

```
method all_false_interp(vs: seq<propVar>)
    returns (result: pInterpretation)
    ensures forall v :: v in vs ==> v in result //kjs
{
    result := map[];
    var i := 0; // the number of elements in the map so far
    while (i < | vs |)
        invariant i <= |vs|;
        invariant forall k :: 0 <= k < i ==> vs[k] in result;
    {
        result := result[ vs[i] := false ];
        i := i + 1;
```

```
        }
}
```

## 13.4 HuH???

```
method truth_table_inputs_for_props(ps: seq<prop>)
    returns (result: seq<pInterpretation>)
{
    var vs := seqVarsInProps(ps);
    result := truth_table_inputs_for_vars(vs);
    return;
}
```

## 13.5 Increment Interpretation

Given a sequence of variables and an interpretation for those variables, computes a "next" interpretation. Treat the sequence of values as a binary integer and increment it by one. Any variables in vs that are not in interp are ignored. Would be better to enforce a pre-condition to rule out this possibility.

```
method next_interp(vs: seq<propVar>, interp: pInterpretation)
    returns (result: pInterpretation)
    requires forall v :: v in vs ==> v in interp;    //kjs
    ensures forall v :: v in vs ==> v in result;
{
    result := interp;
    var i := | vs | - 1;
    while (i >= 0 )
        invariant forall v :: v in vs ==> v in result;   //kjs
    {
        if (interp[ vs[i] ] == false)
        {
            result := result[ vs[i] := true ];
            break;
        }
        else
        {
            result := result[ vs[i] := false ];
        }
        i := i - 1;
    }
}
```

## 13.6 Print Truth Table for a Propositional Logic Proposition

```
method show_truth_table_for_prop(p: prop, ord: seq<propVar>, labels: bool)
    requires forall v :: v in getVarsInProp(p) ==> v in ord; // kjs
{
    var varSeq := seqVarsInProp(p);
    var tt_inputs := truth_table_inputs_for_vars(varSeq);
```

```
    var i := 0;
    while (i < | tt_inputs |)
    {
        show_interpretation(tt_inputs[i],ord,labels);
        print " :: ";
        var tt_input := tt_inputs[i];
        var out := pEval(p, tt_inputs[i]);
        var propString := showProp(p);
        if labels { print propString, " := "; }
        print out, "\n";
        i := i + 1;
    }
}
```

}

# 13.7 Utility Routine

Compute and return $2\hat{}n$ given n.

```
function method pow2(n: nat): (r: nat)
    ensures r >= 1
{
    if n == 0 then 1 else 2 * pow2(n-1)
}
```

## 13.7.1 Models

This important method returns a sequence containing all (and only) the models of the given proposition. It works by generating a sequence of all possible interpretations for the variables in the proposition (this is the purpose of truth_table_inputs), and by then passing these interpretations, the proposition, and an empty list of models to the helper function, which augments that empty list with each of the interpretations for which the proposition evaluates to true. */

```
method get_models(p: prop) returns
    (r: seq<pInterpretation>)
{
    var tt_inputs := truth_table_inputs_for_prop(p);
    r := get_models_helper (tt_inputs, p, []);
    return r;

}
```

This method iterates through a list of interpretations and appends each one, for which the given proposition, e, evaluates to true, to the list, acc, which is then returned.

```
method get_models_helper(tt_inputs: seq<pInterpretation>, p: prop, acc: seq<pInterpretation>)
    returns (r: seq<pInterpretation>)
    requires forall v :: v in getVarsInProp(p) ==>
                forall i :: 0 <= i < |tt_inputs| ==>
                    v in tt_inputs[i];  // kjs -- need to import variables
 {
    var idx := 0;
```

```
    var res := acc;
    while (idx < | tt_inputs |)
    {
        if pEval(p, tt_inputs[idx])
        { res := res + [ tt_inputs[idx] ]; }
        idx := idx + 1;
    }
    return res;
}
```

```
}
```

## 13.7.2 Satisfiability, Unsatisfiability, Validity

Return true (and an empty interpretation) if the given Boolean expression is valid, otherwise return false with a counter-example, i.e., an interpretation for which the given expression is false.

```
method satisfiable(e: prop) returns (result: bool,
                                     models: seq<pInterpretation>)
{
    models := get_models(e);
    if | models | > 0 { return true, models; }
    return false, [];
}
```

Return true (and an empty interpretation) if e is unsatisfiable, otherwise return false and a counterexample, i.e., a model, i.e., an interpretation, that makes the expression true.

```
method unsatisfiable(e: prop)
    returns (result: bool,
             counters: seq<pInterpretation>)
{
    var hasModels: bool;
    hasModels, counters := satisfiable(e);
    return !hasModels, counters;
}
```

A proposition is valid if it's true under every interpretation. If it's not valid, then there will be some interpretation under which it's false. In this case, the negation of the proposition will be true under that interpretation, and it will thus be a counterexample to the claim that the proposition is valid. If such a "witness" to the invalidity of the original proposition is found, return false to the question of validity, along with the witnesses to invalidity.

```
method valid(e: prop) returns (result: bool,
                               counters: seq<pInterpretation>)
{
    var negIsSat: bool;
    negIsSat, counters := satisfiable(pNot(e));
    return !negIsSat, counters;
}
```

Invalidity means there's a witness to the negation of the main propositions, i.e., that the negation is satisfiable. Try to satisfy it and return results and counterexamples (models of the negated prop) accordingly.

```
    method invalid(e: prop) returns (result: bool,
                            counters: seq<pInterpretation>)
```

```
   {
      var negIsSat: bool;
      negIsSat, counters := satisfiable(pNot(e));
      return negIsSat, counters;
   }
}
```

# NATURAL DEDUCTION

Deductive logical reasoning involves arguments of a very specific form, based on the idea that: if one is in a context in which a set of propositions (called "premises") are true, then it is necessarily the case that another proposition, called a "conclusion", must also be true."

We represent such an argument in the form of what we will call an inference rule. An inference rule asserts that if each premise in a given list of premises is true, then a given conclusion must also be true. We represent such an inference fule textually like this.

$$\frac{list\ of\ premises}{conclusion}\text{name-of-rule}$$

Above the line is the context: a list of premises. Below the line is the conclusion. To the right of this context/conclusion pair is a name for the rule.

For example, the inference rule that we generally call "and introduction" (or "and_intro" for short) asserts this: if we know a proposition, P, is true, and we know that a proposition Q is true, then it must be that the proposition P /Q is also true. Here's how we'd write this rule.

$$\frac{P\quad Q}{P\wedge Q}\text{and-intro}$$

Valid inference rules, such as and_intro, provide us with powerful means for logical reasoning. But not every proposed inference rule is valid. Here's an example. It's not that case in general that if P implies Q (the context) then not P implies not Q, the conclusion. Thus is such a classic example of an invalid form of reasoning that logicians have given it a name: denying the antecedent. (Antecedent is another name for premise.) Here's how we'd write this bad rule.

$$\frac{P\rightarrow Q}{\neg P\rightarrow\neg Q}\text{deny-antecedent}$$

Consider an example of this for of reasoning to understand that it's not valid. While it's true that "if it's raining outside the ground is wet", that doesn't mean that "if the ground is wet then it must be raining outside." There might be other reasons for wet ground, such as a sprinkler being turned on, snow melting, or a fire hydrant being running. This inference rule does not constutute an always-valid form of deductive reasoning.

In this unit, we develop a suite of proposed inference rules and check each one for validity using our propositional logic validity checker. To check a rule, we convert it into an implication asserting that the conjunction of the premises implies the conclusion, and then we just check that proposition for validity using the methods we have already developed: namely by constructing a truth table and checking that the proposition is true in each of its possible interpretations.

For example, we'd validate the and_intro rule by converting it into the proposition (P /Q) -> (P /Q). The left side (the premise) is obtained by conjoining the individual premises, P and Q, yielding P /Q. The right

hand side is just the conclusion. And it should be clear that the resulting proposition, which just says that P /Q implies itself (i.e., that P /Q is true whenever P /Q is true) is always true. If you're not convinced, represent the congoined proposition, run our validity checker, and check the truth table!

Most of the inference rules we will propose will turn out to be valid. These end up being fundamental inference rules for deductive logic and proof, the topic of the next chapter of this course. A few of rules we propose will end up being not valid. These will capture common faulty forms of reasoning.

# 14.1 Aristotle's Logic

Among the valid rules, two important ones originated with Aristotle: syllogism and modus ponens. Here they are

## 14.1.1 Syllogism

$$\frac{P \to Q \quad Q \to R}{P \to R} \text{syllogism}$$

This rule says that if from P you can deduce Q and if from Q you can deduce R, then from P you can deduce R directly. Another way to state this rule is that implication is transitive! To check the validity of this rule using truth tables, we convert it into the implication, ((P -> Q) /(Q -> R)) -> (P -> R). Our syntax is adequate to express it, and our validity checker will show it to be true under all interpretations.

## 14.1.2 Modus Ponens

And here's modus ponens, also known as -> (arrow) elimination.

$$\frac{P \to Q \quad P}{Q} \text{modus ponens}$$

It says that if you know it's true that from P you can deduce Q, and if you also know that P is true, then you can deuce that Q must be true. To check it's validity, we'd convert this inference rule into the proposition ((P -> Q) /P) -> Q), and submit this proposition to our truth-table based validity checker (which does confirm its validity).

This unit of the course elaborates and explores these ideas in the style of the course so far: by developing an implementation of the concepts, both to provide a precise and runnable explanation of the ideas, and to enable hands on exploration and experimentation.

The main content of this course module is in the consequence_test file, and in the consequence file that implements the new functions. This file formulates an organized suite of inference rules along with checks of their validity. Compile and run the program to see wat it does.

Most of the work required to implement its functionality was already done to implement satisfiability, unsatisfiability, and validity checking of arbitrary propositions. The only substantial new function needed for this unit was representing inference rules, converting them into propositional logic propositions, and formatting them for nice output. These functions are implemented in consequence.dfy.

# 14.2 Named Inference Rule

In the field of logic and proof, the term "context" generally refers to a set of propositions that are already judged or assumed to be true. Such propositions, called "premises", are then taken as a basis for reasoning

about the truth of another proposition, referred to as a "conclusion". An inference rule is *valid* if the conclusion necessarily follows from the conjunction of the premises.

We represent a context as a sequence of propositions (seq<prop>). We assign the type name "context" as an "alias" for seq<prop>. In the rest of this code, the type, context, thus means seq<prop>. A modern logical reasoning system would represent context not as a list but as a multiset (bag) of propositions, but for our purposes here, a list is just fine.

```
type context = seq<prop>
```

With a representation of a context in hand, we new specify a representation for an inference rule as a named context/conclusion pair. We represent a rule as pair within a pair, of type ((context,prop),string). The first element is itself a pair: a context, which is to say a list of propositions, and a conclusion, which is to say another proposition. The second element is a string giving a name to the rule. That's it. We define "inference_rule" as a type alias (a shorthand) for this type. We then define nicely named functions for getting the values of the fields of objects of this type.

```
type inference_rule = ((context, prop), string)
```

For code readability we provide nicely named functions for projecting (getting) the fields of an inference_rule triple. Recall that fields of a tuple are accessed using the notation r.0, r.1, etc., to get the first, second, etc. fields of a tuple, r. In this case, for example, r.0 is the context/conclusion pair within a rule pair, r; and r.0.0 is the context (list of propositions) in that inner pair.

## 14.3 Semantic Entailment

This method returns a Boolean value indicating wether a given inference rule is semantically valid or not. It does this by (1) conjoining all the premises (a list of propositions) into a single proposition; (2) forming an implication proposition stating that the "and" of all the premises implies the conclusion; (3) by then then checking to determine whether this implication is logically valid; and (4) returning the result as a bool.

```
method isValid(r: inference_rule) returns (validity: bool)
{
    // form the conjunction of the premises
    var conjoined_premises := conjoinPremises(get_context(r));

    // build the implication proposition: premises -> conclusion
    var implication := pImpl(conjoined_premises,get_conclusion(r));

    // check the validity of this implication using a truth table
    var isValid, counter_examples := valid(implication);

    // and return the answer (ignoring any counter-examples)
    return isValid;
}
```

This is the routine that takes a context, i.e., a list of propositions, and turns it into one big conjunction. E.g., given the context, [P1, P2, P3], it returns the proposition pAnd(P1(pAnd(P2,(pAnd(P3, pTrue)))). This routine works by recursion. The base case, for the empty list of premises, is just pTrue. Otherwise it returns the conjunction of the first premise in the list with the recursively computed conjunction of the rest of the premises in the list. The recursion terminates with the empty list, which always produces a pTrue as the last conjunct in the generated proposition. If you're not clear about the notation, premises[1..], please review the Dafny programming notes on sequences. (It means the sublist starting from the second element, at index 1, to the end of the list).

```
function method conjoinPremises(premises: seq<prop>): prop
{
    if |premises|==0 then pTrue
    else pAnd(premises[0], conjoinPremises(premises[1..]))
}
```

# 14.4 Syntactic Entailment and the Rules of Natural Deduction

## 14.4.1 Inference rules good for classical and constructive logic

Most rules apply to both classical and constructive logic. A few rules involving negation elimination are valid only in classical logic, but at the cost of extractability. KS: check and explain.

### True Introduction

$$\frac{}{true}\text{true introduction}$$

```
// True Introduction
var true_intro: inference_rule  := (([], pTrue), "true_intro");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(true_intro);
```

### False Elimination

$$\frac{false}{P}\text{false elimination}$$

```
var false_elim  := (([pFalse], P),              "false_elim");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(false_elim);
```

### Negation

FIX THIS.

$$\frac{P \rightarrow false}{\neg P}\text{not introduction}$$

```
// note to kevin: check with jeremy on this one
var not_intro := (([pImpl(P,pFalse)],pNot(P)), "not_intro");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(false_intro);
```

### And Introduction and Elimination

$$\frac{P \quad Q}{P \wedge Q}\text{and-intro}$$

```
var and_intro   := (([P, Q], pAnd(P,Q)),        "and_intro");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(and_intro);
```

$$\frac{P \wedge Q}{P} \text{ and-elimination-left}$$

```
var and_elim_l  := (([pAnd(P, Q)], P),          "and_elim_l");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(and_elim_l);
```

$$\frac{P \wedge Q}{Q} \text{ and-elimination-right}$$

```
var and_elim_r  := (([pAnd(P, Q)], Q),          "and_elim_r");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(and_elim_r);
```

## Or Introduction and Elimination Rules

$$\frac{P}{P \vee Q} \text{ or-introduction-left}$$

```
var or_intro_l  := (([P], pOr(P, Q)),           "or_intro_l");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(or_intro_l);
```

$$\frac{Q}{P \vee Q} \text{ or-introduction-right}$$

```
var or_intro_r  := (([Q], pOr(P, Q)),           "or_intro_r");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(or_intro_r);
```

$$\frac{P \vee Q \quad P \to R \quad Q \to R}{R} \text{ or-elimination}$$

```
var or_elim     := (([pOr(P,Q),pImpl(P,R), pImpl(Q,R)],R), "or_elim");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(or_elim);
```

## Implication Introduction and Elimination Rules

$$\frac{P \to Q \quad P}{Q} \text{ arrow-elimination}$$

```
var impl_elim   := (([pImpl(P, Q), P], Q), "impl_elim");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(impl_elim);
```

$$\frac{FIX}{THIS} \text{ arrow-introduction}$$

```
// impl_intro is a little harder to express: ([P] |= Q) |= (P -> Q)
```

**Resolution**

$$\frac{P \lor Q \quad \neg Q \lor R}{P \lor R}\text{resolution}$$

```
// resolution rules of inference: used in many theorem provers
var resolution   := (([pOr(P, Q), pOr(pNot(Q), R)], pOr(P, R)), "resolution");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(resolution);
```

$$\frac{P \lor Q \quad \neg Q}{P}\text{unit-resolution}$$

```
var unit_resolution  := (([pOr(P,Q), pNot(Q)], P), "unit_resolution");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(unit_resolution);
```

**Aristotle's Rules**

$$\frac{P \to Q \quad Q \to R}{P \to R}\text{syllogism}$$

```
// a few more valid and classically recognized rules of inference
var syllogism    := (([pImpl(P, Q), pImpl(Q, R)], pImpl(P, R)), "syllogism");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(syllogism);
```

$$\frac{P \to Q}{\neg Q}\text{modus-tollens}$$

```
var modusTollens := (([pImpl(P, Q), pNot(Q)], pNot(P)), "modusTollens");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(modusTollens);
```

## 14.4.2 Inference Rules Valid in Classical but Not in Constructive Logic

$$\frac{\neg\neg P}{P}\text{double-negation-elimination}$$

```
// rules in classical but not intuitionistic (constructive) logic
var double_not_elim := (([pNot(pNot(P))], P), "double_not_elim");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(double_not_elim);
```

$$\frac{}{P \lor \neg P}\text{excluded-middle}$$

```
var excluded_middle: inference_rule := (([],pOr(P, pNot(P))), "excluded_middle");
 checkAndShowInferenceRule(excluded_middle);
```

### 14.4.3 Fallacious Inference Rules

Now for the presentation and refutation of some logical fallacies.

$$\frac{P \to Q \quad Q}{P} \text{ affirm-consequence}$$

```
var affirm_conseq  := (([pImpl(P, Q), Q], P), "affirm_consequence");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(affirm_conseq);
```

$$\frac{P \vee Q \quad P}{\neg Q} \text{ affirm-disjunct}$$

```
var affirm_disjunct := (([pOr(P,Q), P],pNot(Q)),"affirm_disjunct");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(affirm_disjunct);
```

$$\frac{P \to Q}{\neg P \to \neg Q} \text{ deny-antecedent}$$

```
var deny_antecedent := (([pImpl(P,Q)],pImpl(pNot(P),pNot(Q))),"deny antecedent");
checkAndShowInferenceRule(deny_antecedent);
```

## 14.5 Algebraic properties / identities

Now we assert and check major algebraic properties of our operators. Because we do this for arbitrary propositions, P, Q, and R, one can be assure that these properties hold no matter what P, Q, and are actually mean in the real world (e.g., maybe P means, "CS is massively awesome"; but it just doesn't matter).

$$\frac{P \wedge Q}{Q \wedge P} \text{ and-commutes}$$

```
var and_commutes_theorem  := (([],
                    pAnd(pImpl(pAnd(P,Q),pAnd(Q,P)),
                        pImpl(pAnd(Q,P),pAnd(P,Q)))),
                    "P and Q is equivalent to Q and P\n");
```

$$\frac{P \vee Q}{Q \vee P} \text{ or-commutes}$$

```
// why is explicit type needed here?
var or_commutes_theorem: named_sequent  := (([],
                    pAnd(pImpl(pOr(P,Q),pOr(Q,P)),
                        pImpl(pOr(Q,P),pOr(P,Q)))),
                    "P or Q is equivalent to Q or P\n");
```

## 14.6 Exercises

Represent and validate in Dafny:

begin{enumerate} item associativity of and item associativity of or item double negation elimination (as equivalence) item contrapositive (P -> Q) <=> (~Q -> ~P) item implication elminiation (P -> Q) <=> ~P || Q item demorgan-and: ~(P /Q) <=> ~P / ~Q item demorgan-or: ~(P / Q) <=> ~P /~Q item dist-and/or: P /(Q / R) <=> (P /Q) / (P /R) item dist-or/and: P / (Q /R) <=> (P / Q) /(P / R) end{enumerate}

# PREDICATE LOGIC

In this chapter we move from propositional to first-order predicate logic. First-order predicate logic is the logic of Dafny. Predicate logic is much more expressive than propositional logic, which as we've seen is isomorphic to Boolean expressions that include Boolean variables.

Key changes include:

- Variables now range over arbitrary sets; an interpretation specifies the sets over which the variables in a predicate logic expression range; for example, a variable can range over the set of natural numbers, of strings, of Joe's family members, etc.

- Universal and existential quantifiers allow one to state that some condition is true for all, or for at least one, value, respectively.

- Predicates/relations. Expressions can refer to arbitrary relations; for example one can assert that two variables, ranging over the natural numbers, are equal. Equality is a binary relation.

- Functions

The issue of *validity* is complicated as it now has to be understood as involving judgements of truth that are independent of any particular interpretation.

MORE TO COME HERE.

# PROOFS

KS: Edit this intro.

Finally, logic consequence. A set of logical propositions, premises, is said to entail another, a conclusion, if in every interpretation where all of the premises are true the conclusion is also true. See the file, consequence.dfy, for a consequence checker that works by exhaustive checking of all interpretations. <More to come>.

KS: Transition here from sematic to syntactic entailment.

Note to self: The next few chapters separate complexities on the way to full first-order logic. The first, addressed here, is the shift from a semantic to a syntactic approach to judging truth. Derivation vs. Evaluation.

We will use the reasoning principles just validated semantically to formulate analogous syntactic rules: i.e., natural deduction. These rules provide a needed alternative to truth tables for ascertaining truth in propositional logic. Truth tables grow too large too fast.

The next two chapters introduce, respectively, predicate logic without quantifiers but including interpretations over arbitrary sets; and then the introduction of quantifiers. [FIX BELOW: UNDER CONSTRUCTION.]

One way to define a set of *inference* rules that define ways that one can transform one set of expressions (premises) into another (a conclusion) in such a manner that whenver all the premises are true, the conclusion will be, too.

Why would anyone care about rules for transforming expressions in abstract languages? Well, it turns out that *syntactic* reasoning is pretty useful. The idea is that we represent a real-world phenomenon symbolically, in such a language, so the abstract sentence means something in the real world.

Now comes the key idea: if we imbue mathematical expressions with real-world meanings and then transform these expression in accordance with valid rules for acceptable transformations of such expressions, then the resulting expressions will also be meaningful.

A logic, then, is basically a formal language, one that defines a set of well formed expressions, and that provides a set of *inference* rules for taking a set of expressions as premises and deriving another one as a consequence. Mathematical logic allows us to replace human mental reasoning with the mechanical *transformation of symbolic expressions.*

## 16.1 Unscalability of Semantic Entailment

At this point, we've proposed and validated (using truth tables) a set of fundamental inference rules. Unfortunately, using truth tables doesn't scale well. We thus play an important game, now, where we simply accept the inference rules as valid transformation between sets of premises and conclusions. We view the Ps, Qs, Rs in the rules we validated as "standing for" arbitrary propositions, and we now apply these rules without having to go back and validate the results "semantically" (using truth tables). We thus transition

from what we call "semantic entailment" to "syntactic entailment," which finally moves us into the realm of logic and proof.

We now also shift tools, from Dafny, which allows us to write logic, but which largely hides the proofs and their construction, to Lean, which is what we call a proof assistant. Many propositions are too difficult for tools such as Dafny to prove automatically. If we still want the assurances of correctness (of software or even just in pure mathematics) provided by a strongly typed checker, then we have to use a tool in which we manipulate both propositions and proofs explicitly. We are now there.

The purpose of this initial unit is to give you an introduction to the fundamental concepts of propositions and proofs, using a proof tool as an aid to learning: here the Lean Prover.

A key point in this chapter is that different forms of propositions have different forms of proofs, and require you to use different proof "strategies" to construct such proofs. These ideas are fundmental to discrete mathematics whether or not you are using a proof tool. Benefits of using a tool like Lean include nearly absolute assurance that you haven't made a mistake by accepting a proof that isn't really valid.

## 16.2 Natural Deduction

Natural deduction, which is the proof system that we're using here, is a set of functions (inference rules) for taking apart (elimination) and putting together (introduction) proofs of propositions to produce proofs of other propositions.

This natural deduction proof systems was invented long before autoamted tools, and is one of the fundamental systems for precise logical reasoning. The Lean Prover and similar "proof assistants" automate natural deduction proof development, and and use strong, static type checking to make sure that you can never produce an incorrect proof: because you're never allowed to pass arguments of the wrong types to the inference rules.

Take-away: You're learning the natural deduction style of producing proofs of mathematical conjectures; but unlike the students doing this with paper and pencil and no tool to help, you have the benefit of automation and a highly trustworthy correctness checker.

The cost is that now you can't be sloppy. Inded, you have to be very precise about every step. Experienced mathematicians like to skip many steps in writing proofs, when they (think they) know that the details will all work out. The upside is that it's easier to write proofs. The downside is that errors can easily go undetected. Many errors in proofs of important theorems have only been found years after the proofs were reviewed by mathematicians and accepted as true in the community. When lives depend on the correctness of proofs, it can be worth the trouble to make sure they're right. -/

## 16.3 Forms of Propositions; Forms of Proofs

With this background in hand, we can now use what we've learned to start to investigate the world of mathematical logic and proof at a high level of sophistication and automation!

In particular, we now start to explore different *forms of propositions* and corresponding *proof strategies*. The first unit in the remainder of this introduction focuses on propositions that assert that two terms are equal. The strategy we see used here is "proof by simplification and by the reflexive property of equality".

## 16.4 Introduction and Elimination Rules

## 16.5 True Introduction

Recall from our introduction to inference rules in propositional logic that the proposition, pTrue, is true without any preconditions. We wrote the rule like this: ([],pTrue), and we called it "true intro". We proved the rule semantically valid, so we can write [] |= pTrue. That is, from an empty context (no previous assumptions) we can conclude that pTrue is true.

In lean, "true" is the true proposition. You can check that "true" is a proposition using #check.

```
#check true
```

Note: the proposition, true, is different than the Boolean value, true. The Boolean value, true, written "tt" in Lean, is one of the two values of the bool datatype. It is not a proposition. Chek it out.

```
#check tt
```

In Lean and similar proof assistants, propositions, such as true in Lean, can be defined inductively. The keyword for an inductive datatype in Dafny is just "datatype". Recall the definition of our syntax for propositional logic, for example. The values of a type are defined by a list of contructors.

As proofs are values of types, we can define propositions as types and proofs of such propositions as values produced by constructors. The simplest example is the proposition, true, in Lean. It's defined in Lean's core library like so:

```
inductive true : Prop
| intro : true
```

This says that true is of type Prop, i.e., is a proposition, and it has just one value, proof, namely "intro". The constructor says, "intro" is of type (i.e., is a proof of) true. The intro constructor takes no arguments and so is always available as a proof of true. We thus have our true introduction: just use the constructor. Here we should how to assert that the proposition "true" is true (there's a proof for it) by giving the one and only proof, namely "intro". To refer to a constructor of a type, use the type name dot constructor name.

```
theorem proofOfTrue: true := true.intro
```

True introduction isn't a very useful rule of natural deduction, as it doesn't allow you to conclude anything new. It's not used much in real-world proofs, but it's good to know about.

### 16.5.1 The proposition, false

In Lean, false is also a proposition. By contrast, the Boolean false value in Lean is written as ff.

```
#check false     -- proposition (Prop)
#check ff        -- Boolean value (bool)
```

false is meant to be and is a proposition that is never true, i.e., for which there is no proof. As a type, it has no values. It is said to be an "uninhabited" type.

The false proposition/type is defined inductively as having type, Prop, and as having exactly no constructors! It's a proposition but there is no way to contruct a proof. Here's the definition of false from the Lean core libraries:

```
inductive false : Prop
```

That's it, there are no constructors.

There is no false introduction rule. There is no way to introduce a proof of false because there is no proof of false. We'll discuss false elimination later. -/

## 16.5.2 Proofs Involving Conjunctions

We now explore the use of the and introduction and elimination inference rules, whether doing paper-and-pencil mathematics or when using an automated proof assistant such as Lean. This section also serves as an introduction to the idea that you use different proof techniques to prove different kinds of propositions: e.g., conjunctions, implications, disjuctions, etc.

### And Introduction

Whether in pencil-and-paper mathematics or when using a proof assistant such as Lean, to prove a conjunction, $P \wedge Q$, you have to produce a proof of P and a proof of Q. You then use the "and introduction" inference rule to conclude that $P \wedge Q$ is true, where the proof is really just the ordered pair of the proofs of the individual conjuncts, P and Q, respectively.

What we're going to see as we move forward on the topics of proofs is that of different forms of propositions require different kinds of proof techniques, or "proof strategies."" Learning to recognize what kind of proposition you're looking at, and then to pick the right proof strategy, is critical. When the goal is to prove a conjunction, P Q, the strategy is to prove each individually then combine the proofs using the and introduction rule to reach the goal.

Remember the and introduction rule from our work on propositional logic. We wrote it like this [P, Q] P Q. Now that we've equated "being true" with "having a proof" we can write it with some more details, like this: [pfP: P, pfQ: Q] (pfP, pfQ): P Q.

In other words, if I have a proof, pfP, of P (i.e., a value, pfP, type, P!), and a proof, pfQ, of Q, then I can build a proof of P Q, in the form of the ordered pair (pfQ, pfQ).

The and introduction rule can be understood as a function that takes two proof values, of types P and Q, respectively, and returns a new proof value, of type P Q in the form of an ordered pair of the "smaller" proofs.

Whether using a proof assistant or just doing paper and pencil math, the strategy for proving a conjunction of propositions is to split the conjunction into its two component propositions, obtain proofs of them individually, and then combine/take the two proofs as a proof of the overall conjunction. The benefit of using a proof assistant is that aspects are automated, and you're not allowed to make mistakes. -/

So that we can play around with this idea, given that we already have a proof of 0=0 (zeqz), we now contruct a proof of 1=1 so that we have two propositions and proofs to play with.

```
#check zeqz
```

```
theorem oeqo : 1 = 1 := rfl
```

To start, let's prove 0=0 1=1. We already have a proof of 0=0, namely zeqz. And we already have a proof of 1=1, namely oeqo. So we should be able to produce a proof of 0=0 1=1 by using the "and introduction" inference rule. Remember that it says that if a proposition, P, is true (and now by that we mean that we have a proof of it), and if Q is true, then we can deduce (construct a proof!) that P Q is true. Here's how you do that in Lean. (Note: we get the logical and symbol, , by typing "and", i.e., backslash-and, followed by a space.)

```
theorem t2: 0=0 ∧ 1=1 :=  -- proposition
    and.intro zeqz oeqo    -- build proof

#check t2
```

NOTE!!! Whereas we typically define functions to take a single tuples of argument values, and thus write the arguments to functions as tuples (in parenthesis), e.g., inc(0), here we write arguments to proof constructors (inference rules) without parenthesis and without commas between values. So here for example, and below, we write "and.intro zeqz oeqo" rather than and.intro(zeqz, oeqo). Be careful when you get to the exercises to remember this point.

### And Elimination

And introduction creates a proof of a conjunction from proofs of its parts (its "conjuncts"). Such a proof is a pair the elements of which are the two "smaller" proofs. Given such a proof/pair, the and *elimination* rules return one of the other the component proofs. For example, from a proof of P ∧ Q, and.elim_left will return the contained proof of P, and the and.elim_right rule returns the proof of Q.

```
theorem e1: 0=0 := and.elim_left t2
```

This says that a value, e1, of type 0=0, i.e., a proof of 0=0, can be obtained by applying and.elim_left to t2, which is a proof of 0=0 ∧ 1=1. The and elimination rules are just "project operators" (getter functions) on pairs of proofs.

## 16.5.3 Implications

Next we turn to proofs of propositions in the form of implications, such as P → Q. Up until now, we've read this implication as a proposition that claims that "if P is true then Q must be true."

But now we've understood "truth" to mean that there is a proof. So we would view the proposition, P → Q, to be true if there's a proof of P → Q. And we have also seen that we can view propositions as types, and proofs as values. So what we need to conclude that P → Q is true is a proof, i.e., a value of type P → Q.

What does such a value look like? Well, what does the type P → Q look like? We have seen such types before. It looks like a function type: for a function that when given any value of type, P, returns a value of type, Q. And indeed, that's just what we want. We will view P → Q, the proposition, to be true, if and only if we can produce a *function* that, when given any proof of P, gives us back a proof of Q. If there is such a function, it means that if P is true (if you can produce a proof value for P) then Q is true (you can obtain a proof for Q) just by calling the given function. Note, proving P → Q doesn't tell you anything about whether P is true, but only that *if* you can give a proof of P, then you can construct a proof of Q: if you "assume" that P is true, then you can deduce that Q is too.

To make this idea clear, it will help to spend a little more time talking about functions and function types. In particular, we'll introduce here a new notation for saying something that you already know how to say well: a way to represent function bodies without having to give them names. These are given the somewhat arcane name, lambda expressions, also written as λ expressions. So let's get started.

## 16.5.4 Interlude: Function Values

We can define functions in Lean almost as in Dafny. Here are two functions to play with: increment and square. Go back and look at the function.dfy file to see just how similar the syntax is.

```
def inc(n: nat): nat := n + 1
def sqr(n: nat): nat := n * n
def comp(n: nat): nat := sqr (inc n)
```

### Functions are Values, Too: Lambda Expressions

Now's a good time to make a point that should make sense: functions are values of function types. Our familiar notation doesn't make function types explicit, but it shouldn't be a stretch for you to accept that the type of inc is nat → nat. Lean provides nice mathematical notation so if you type "nat" you'll get . So, that type of inc is best written, → .

We could thus have declared inc to be a value of type → , to which we would then assign a function value. That is a new concept: we need to write formally what we'd say informally as "the function that takes a nat, n, as an argument and that returns the nat, n + 1 as a result."

The way we write that in Lean (and in what we call the lambda calculus more generally) is "λ n, n + 1". The greek letter, lambda (λ), says "the following variable is an argument to a function". Then comes a comma followed by the body of the function, usually using the name of the argument. Here then is the way we'd rewrite inc using this new notation.

def inc': → := λ n: nat, n + 1 def inc'' := λ n: nat, n + 1

#check inc' 1 #eval inc' 1

As you might suspect, from the function value, Lean can infer its type, so you don't have to write it explicitly. But you do have to write the type of n here, as Lean can't figure out if you mean nat or int or some other type that supports a * operator.

def sqr' := λ n: nat, n * n

Given a function defined in this way, you can apply it just as you would apply any other function.

def sq3 := sqr' 3

Don't believe that sq3 is therefore of type nat? You can check the type of any term in Lean using its #check command. Just hover your mouse over the #check.

```
#check sq3
```

Do you want to evaluate the expression (aka, term) sq3 to see that it evaluates to 9? Hover your mouse over the #eval.

```
#eval sq3
```

To give a proof (value) for a proposition in the form of an implication, we'll need to provide a function value, as discussed. While we could write a named function using def and then give that name as a proof, it is often easier to give a lambda expression directly, as we'll see shortly.

### Recursive Function Definitions

We can also define recursive functions, such as factorial and fibonacci using Lean's version of Dafny's "match/case" construct (aka, "pattern matching").

Here's how you write it. The first line declares the function name and type. The following lines, each starting with a bar character, define the cases. The first rule matches the case where the argument to fac is 0, and in that case the result is 1. The second case, which is written here a little differently than before, matches any value that is one more than some smaller argument, n, and returns that "one more than n" times the

factorial of the samller number, n. Writing it this way allows Lean to prove to itself that the recursion terminates.

```
def fac:   →
| 0 := 1
| (n + 1) := (n + 1) * fac n
```

We can now write some test cases for our function ... as little theorems! And we can check that they work by ... proving them! Here once again our proof is by the reflexive property of equality, and lean is automatically reducing (simplifying) the terms (fac 5) and 120 before checking that the results are the same. fac 5 does in fact reduce to 120, so the terms, fac 5, and 120, are definitionally equal, and in this case, rfl constructs a proof of the equality.

```
theorem fac5is120 : fac 5 = 120 := rfl
```

### 16.5.5 Rules for Implication

So far we've see how to build proofs of equality propositions (using simplification and reflexivity, i.e., rfl), of conjunctions (using and.intro), and of disjuctions (using one of the or introduction rules). What about implications?

#### Arrow Introduction

Suppose we wanted to show, for example, that (1=1 ∧ 0=0() → (0=0 ∧ 1=1). Here the order of the conjuncts is reversed.

How to think about this? First, remember that an implication, such as P → Q, doesn't claim that the premise, P, is necessarily true, or that Q is. Rather, it only claims that *if the premise, P, is true, then the conclusion, Q, must be as well.

Again, by "true", we now mean that we have or can construct a proof. An implication is thus read as saying if you assume that the premise, P, is true, in other words if you assume that you are given a proof of P, then you can then derive (construct) a proof of Q.

But proofs are just values, so a proposition in the form of an implication, P → Q is true when we have a way to convert any value (proof) of type P into a value (proof) of type Q. We call such a value converter a function!

Think about this: the implication, P → Q is true if we can define a function (body) of type, P → Q.

So now, think about how to write a function that takes an argument of type 1=1 ∧ 0=0 and that returns a result of type 0=0 ∧ 1=1 (the conjuncts are biw in the reverse order).

Start by recalling that a proof of a conjunction, such as 0=0 ∧ 1=1, is a pair of proofs; the and elimination rules you a way to get at the individual values/proofs in such pairs; and the and introduction rule creates such a pair given arguments of the right types. The strategy for writing the function we need is thus: start with a proof of 1=1 ∧ 0=0, which is a pair, (proof of 1=1, proof of 0=0); then extract the component proofs, then build and return a pair constituting a proof of the conjunction with the component proofs in the opposite order.

Here's an ordinary function that does the trick. From an assumption that 1=1 ∧ 0=0 it constructs and returns a proof of 0=0 ∧ 1=1. It does it just as we said: extract the component proofs then put them back together in the reverse order. Voila!

```
def and_swap(assumption: 1=1 ∧ 0=0): 0=0 ∧ 1=1 :=
    and.intro
```

```
        (and.elim_right assumption)
        (and.elim_left assumption)
```

A paper and pencil proof could be written like this. "Assume 0=0 ∧ 1=1. From this premise (using the and elimination rule of natural deduction), we can deduce immediately that both 0=0 and 1=1. Having shown that these propositions are true, we can immediately (using the and introduction rule of natural deduction) deduce that 0=0 ∧ 1=1. QED."

The QED stands for the Latin, quod es demontratum, so it is shown. It's used to signal that the goal to be proved has been proved.

Here's the same proof using a lambda. You can see here how lambda expressions (also know as anonymous functions) can make for cleaner code. They're also essential when you want to return a function.

```
theorem and_commutes: 1=1 ∧ 0=0 → 0=0 ∧ 1=1 :=

  λ pf: 1=1 ∧ 0=0,        -- given/assuming pf
    and.intro             -- build desired proof
        (and.elim_right pf)
        (and.elim_left pf)
```

The bottom line here is that we introduce, which is to say that we prove a proposition that has, an "arrow," by defining a function.

Whereas the proof of a conjunction is pair of smaller proofs, the proof of an implication is a function from one type of proof to another.

Whether using a proof assistant or writing paper and pencil proofs, they key to proving an implication is to show that if you *assume* you are given a proof of the premise, you can turn that into a proof of the conclusion. We thus have a second fundamental proof strategy. -/

### Arrow Elimination

The arrow elimination inference rule looks like this: [P -> Q, P] ⊢ Q. It starts with both an implication (aka, function), in the context, along with a proof of its premise, and derives the conclusion of the implication. This is just modus ponens, and the way you get from the premises to the conclusion is by applying the implication (it's a function) to the assumed proof of P, yielding a proof of Q! Modus ponens is function application!

```
theorem modus_ponens'
  (hImp: 1=1 ∧ 0=0 → 0=0 ∧ 1=1) (hc: 1=1 ∧ 0=0): 0=0 ∧ 1=1
    := hImp hc   -- apply function hImp to argument hc

theorem modus_ponens'':
    (1=1 ∧ 0=0 → 0=0 ∧ 1=1) →
        1=1 ∧ 0=0 →
            0=0 ∧ 1=1 :=
    λ hImp hc, (hImp hc)
```

Arrow elimination is modus ponens is function application to an argument. Here's the general statement of modus ponens as a function that is polymorphic in the types/propositions, P and Q. You can see that the propositions are arguments to the function, along with a P → Q function and a (value) proof of (type) P, finally producing a (value) proof of (type) Q.

```
theorem modus_ponens:  P Q: Prop, (P → Q) → P → Q :=
    λ (P Q: Prop) (funP2Q: P → Q) (pfP: P), funP2Q pfP
```

We could of course have written that using ordinary function notation.

```
theorem modus_ponens2
    (P Q: Prop) (pfImp: (P → Q)) (pfP: P): Q :=
        (pfImp pfP)
```

#### Optional material on using type inference

As an advanced concept, putting arguments in curly braces tells Lean to use type inference 'to infer their values.

```
theorem modus_ponens3
    {P Q: Prop} (pfImp: (P → Q)) (pfP: P): Q :=
        (pfImp pfP)
```

Type inference can also be specified for lambdas by enclosing parameters to be inferred in braces.

```
theorem modus_ponens4:  P Q: Prop, (P → Q) → P → Q :=
    λ P Q: Prop, λ pfImp: P → Q, λ pfP: P, (pfImp pfP)
```

Compare the use of our modus_ponens function with modus_ponens3. In the latter case, Lean infers that the propositions (values of the first two parameters) are P and Q, Such uses of type inference improve code readaibility.

## 16.6 Proofs Involving Disjunctions

### 16.6.1 Or Introduction

To prove a conjunction, we saw that we need to construct a pair of proofs, one for each conject. To prove a disjunction, P    Q, we just need a proof of P or a proof of Q. We thus have two inference rules to prove P    Q, one takeing a proof of P and returning a proof of P    Q, and one taking a proof of Q and returning a proof of P    Q. We thus have two or introduction rules in the natural deduction proof system, one taking a proof of the left disjunct (P), and one taking a proof of the right (Q).

For example, we can prove the proposition, 0=0    1=0 using an "or introduction" rule. In general, you have to decide which rule will work. In this case, we won't be able to build a proof of 1=0 (it's not true!), but we can build a proof of 0=0, so we'll do that and then use the left introduction rule to generate a proof of the overall proposition.

The or introduction rules in Lean are called or.inl (left) and or.inr (right). Here then we construct a proof just as described above, but now checked by the tool.

```
theorem t3: 0=0   1=0 :=
    or.inl zeqz

#check zeqz
#eval zeqz

theorem t4: 1=0   1=1 :=
    or.inr oeqo
```

Once again, we emphasize that whether or not you're using Lean or any other tool or no tool at all, the strategy for proving a disjunction is to prove at least one of its disjucts, and then to take that as enough to prove the overall disjunction. You see that each form of proposition has its own corresponding proof strategy

(or at least one; there might be several that work). In the cases we've seen so far, you look at the constructor that was used to build the proposition and from that you select the appropriate inference rule / strategy to use to build the final proof. You then either have, or construct, the proofs that you need to apply that rule to construct the required proof.

As a computational object, a proof of a disjunction is like a discriminated union in C or C++: an object containing one of two values along with a label that tells you what kind of value it contains. In this case, the label is given by the introduction rule used to construct the proof object: either or.inl or or.inr.

## 16.6.2 Or Elimination

[Kevin: Consider section on partial evaluation. Students need it at this point to understand the different ways to parse statements and proofs of chained implications: currying and uncurrying.

The or elimination inference rule, which we first saw and validated, in the unit on propositional logic, is used to prove propositions of the form: P ∨ Q → R.

What's needed to construct this proof are proofs of (1) if P is true then so is R (i.e., P → R), and (2) if Q is true, then so is R (i.e., Q → R.)

Now if you assume or know that at least one of P or Q is true then you can show R by case analysis. Here's the reasoning. One or both of P or Q is true. Also, if P is true, so is R; and if Q is true, so is R. So, R must be true.

Here is an example of the use of Lean's rule for or elimination. It is really just a statement and proof of the elimination rule for or.

```
-- shorthand, without all the explicit lambdas
theorem or_elim:
  forall P Q R: Prop, (P ∨ Q) → (P → R) → (Q → R) → R :=
    λ P Q R pq pr qr,
      or.elim pq pr qr

Version with all the lambdas explicit, and parentheses to make the
associativity in the propositon (and in the corresponding function
definition) clear.
```

```
theorem or_elim':
  forall P Q R: Prop, (P ∨ Q) → ((P → R) → ((Q → R) → R)) :=
    λ (P Q R: Prop), (λ pfPorQ, (λ pfPimpR, (λ pfQimpR,
      or.elim pfPorQ pfPimpR pfQimpR)))

#check or_elim
```

If you prefer an ordinary function, here it is again.

```
def or_elim'' (P Q R: Prop) (pq: P ∨ Q) (pr: P → R) (qr: Q → R): R :=
    or.elim pq pr qr
```

In informal mathematical writing, you would write something like this.

"We aim to prove if either P ∨ Q is true then R follows. We do this by *case analysis*. First we consider when P is true. For this case, we show that P implies R. Second we consider the case were Q is true. For this case, we show if Q is true then R follows. So in either case, R follows. In a context in which you have proofs of P ∨ Q, P → R, and Q → R, you can thus apply or elimination to introduce a proof of R into the context.

## 16.7 Falsity and Negation

### 16.7.1 ¬P

The proposition, ¬P, is read "not P." It's an assertion that P is false. One proves a proposition, ¬P, by showing that that an assumption that P is true leads to a contraction.

We highlight an important point here. This section is about proving ¬P by showing that if you assume there is a proof of P then you can prove "false", which is absurd. In classical logic, you can prove P by showing a proof of ¬P leads to a contradiction. This is the method of "proof by contradiction." It relies on the fact that ¬¬P → P, i.e., on double-negative elimination. In both propositional logic and in classical predicate logic, this is a valid inference rule. It's not valid in the logic of lean unless one adds an axiom allowing it. You *should be*

familiar with (1) the concept of double negative elimination, (2) the idea that it can be used to prove a proposition, P, in classical logic by showing that the assumption of ¬P leads to a contradiction, therefore one can conclude ¬¬P, and then by double negative elimination, P. And you should be familiar with the fact that this form of reasoning is not valid in a constructive logic, such as that of Lean, without the addition of an extra "axiom" allowing it.

So let's get back to the point at hand: ¬P means P → false. You prove ¬P by showing that assuming that there is a proof of P enables you to build a proof of false. That is, you show ¬P by showing that there is a function that, given a proof of P, constructs and returns a proof of false.

In a paper and pencil proof, one would write, "We prove ¬P by showing that an assumption that P is true leads to a contradiction (a proof of false). There can be no such thing, so the assumption must have been wrong, and ¬P must be true. QED." Then you present details proving the implication. That in turn is done by defining a function that, *if* it were ever given a proof of P, would in turn construct and return a proof of false.

The key thing to remember is that the proposition (type) ¬P is defined to be exactly the proposition (function type) P → false. To prove ¬P you have to prove P → false, and this is done, as for any proof of an implication, by defining a function that converts an assumed proof of P into a proof of false.

It's not that you'd ever be able to call such a function: because if ¬P really is true, you'll never be able to give a proof of P as an argument. Rather, the function serves to show that *if* you could be given a proof of P then you'd be able to return a proof of false, and because that's not possible (as there are no proofs of false), there must be no proof of P.

Here's a very simple example. We can prove the proposition ¬ false by giving a function that *if* given a proof of false, returns a proof of false. That's easy: just return the argument itself.

```
theorem notFalse: ¬false :=
    λ pf: false, pf
```

### 16.7.2 Law of Excluded Middle

Strangely, in constructive logic, which is the form of logic that Lean and other such provers implement, you cannot prove that ¬¬P -> P. That is, double negatives can't generally be eliminated.

Double negative elimination is equivalent to having another rule of classical logic: that for any proposition, P, P ∨ ¬P is true. But you will recall that to prove P ∨ ¬P, we have to apply an or.intro rule to either a proof of P or a proof of ¬ P. However, in mathematics, there are important unsolved problems: propositions for which we have neither a proof of the proposition or a proof of its negation. For such problems, we cannot prove either the proposition P or its negation, ¬P, so we can't prove P ∨ ¬P!

### 16.7.3 Proof by Contradiction

This is a bit of a problem because it deprives us of an important proof strategy called proof by contradiction. In this strategy, we start by assuming ¬ P and derive a contraction, proving ¬ ¬ P. In classical logic, that is equivalent to P. But in constructive logic, that's not so. Let's see what happens if we try to prove the theorem, ¬¬P -> P.

We start by observing that ¬¬P means ¬P → false, and that in turn means (P → false) → false. A proof of this would be a function that if given a proof of P → false would produce a proof of false. The argument, a proof of P → false, is itself a function that, if given a proof of P returns a proof of false. But nowhere here do we actually have a proof of P, and there's nothing else to build one from, so there's no way to conver a proof of ¬¬P into a proof of P.

One can however extend the logic of Lean to become a classical logic by adding the law of the excluded middle (that P ∨ ¬P is always true) to the environment as an axiom.

```
axiom excludedMiddle: ∀ P, P ∨ ¬P
```

Note that the definition of ¬ is that if one starts with proof of P then one can conclude false. In double negative elimination one starts with a proof of ¬P and concludes false, and from that contradiction, one infers that P must be true. It's that last step that isn't available in constructive logic. If you want to use classical logic in Lean, you have to add the axiom above. Lean provides a standard way to do this. The problem is that the logic is then no longer "constructive", and that has real costs when it comes to being able to generate code. The details are beyond the scope of this class.

There are two things to remember. One is that proof by contradiction proves P by showing that ¬P leads to a proof of false (a contradiction). This is a very common proof strategy in practice. For example, it's used to prove that the square root of two is irrational. The proof goes like this: Assume that it isn't irrational (that is, that it's rational). Then show that this leads to a conclusion that can't be true. Conclude that the sequare root of two must therefore be irrational.

The second thing to remember is that in constructive logic, this strategy is not available, but it can be enabled by accepting the law of the excluded middle as something that is assumed, not proven, to be true. It is known that this axiom can be added to the core constructive logic without causing the logic to become inconsistent.

### 16.7.4 Impossibility of Contradiction

Here's something else that we can prove. A slightly more interesting example is to prove that for any proposition P, we have ¬(P ∧ ¬P). In other words, it's not possible for both P and ¬ P to be true. We'll write this as: ∀ P: Prop, ¬(P ∧ ¬P). Remember that what this really means is ∀ P: Prop, (P ∧ ¬P) → false. A proof of this claim is a function that will take two arguments: an arbitrary proposition, P, and an assumed proof of (P ∧ ¬P). It will need to return a proof of false. The key to seeing how this is going to work is to recognize that (P ∧ ¬P) in turn means (P ∧ (P → false)). That is, that we have both a proof of P and also a proof of P → false: a function that turns a proof of P into a proof of false. We'll just apply that assumed function to the assumed proof of P to obtain the desired contradiction (proof of false), and that will show that for any P, the assumption that (P ∧ ¬P) lets us build a proof of false, which is to say that there is a function from (P ∧ ¬P) to false, i.e., (P ∧ ¬P) → false, and that is what ¬(P ∧ ¬P) means. Thus we have our proof.

```
theorem noContra: ∀ P: Prop, ¬(P ∧ ¬P) :=
  λ (P: Prop) (pf: P ∧ ¬P),
    (and.elim_right pf) (and.elim_left pf)
```

## 16.7.5 False Introduction

There is no false introduction rule in Lean. If there were, we'd be able to introduce a proof of false, and that would be bad. Why? Because a logic that allows one to prove a contradiction allows one to prove anything at all, and so is useless for distinguishing between true and false statements.

### False Elimination

The phrase to remember is that "From false, anything follows." Ex falso quodlibet is the latin phrase for this dear to logicians.

In other words, if we can prove false, we can prove any proposition, Q, whatsoever.

In Lean, the ability to prove any Q from false is enshrined in the false elimination inference rule.

Here's an example of how it's used. Suppose we wanted to prove that false implies that 0=1. Given a proof of false, we just apply the false.elim inference rule to it, and it "returns" a proof of 0=1. False implies 0=1.

```
theorem fImpZeroEqOne: false → 0 = 1 :=
    λ f: false, false.elim f
```

False elimination works to prove any proposition whatsoever.

```
theorem fImpAnyProp :  Q: Prop, false → Q :=
  λ (Q: Prop) (f: false), false.elim f
```

The way to read the lambda expression is as a function that if given a proof of false applies false.elim to it to produce a proof of 0=1, or Q. The conclusion is an implicit argument to false.elim, which makes this notation less than completely transparent; but that's what's going on.

Here's a proof that shows that if you have a proof of a any proposition P and of its negation, then you can prove any proposition Q whatsoever. This prove combines the idea we've seen before. We use and.elim rules to get at the assumed proof of P and proof of ¬ P. The proof of ¬ P is a function from P → false, which we apply to the assumed proof of P to derive a proof of false. We then apply the false elimination rule (which from false proves anything) to prove Q.

```
theorem fromContraQ:  P Q: Prop, (P  ¬ P) -> Q :=
    λ (P Q: Prop) (pf: P  ¬ P),
        false.elim
            ((and.elim_right pf) (and.elim_left pf))
```

## 16.7.6 Not Introduction

Here's another form of proof by contradiction. If know that ¬Q is true (there can be no proof) of Q, and we also know that P → Q (we have a function *if* given a proof of P returns a proof of Q), then we see that an assumption that P is true leads to a contradiction, which proves ¬P.

```
theorem notPbyContra:
    P Q: Prop, ¬Q → (P → Q) → ¬P :=
    -- need to return proof of P → false
    -- that will be a function of this type
        λ (P Q: Prop) notQ PimpQ,
            λ pfP: P, (notQ (PimpQ pfP))
```

Here's essentially the same proof, written as an ordinary function definition, but where the parameters, P and Q, are to be inferred rather than given as explicit arguments in the λ. The curly braces around P and Q tell Lean to use type inference to infer the values of P and Q.

```
def notPbyContra' {P Q: Prop} (PimpQ: P → Q) (notQ: ¬ Q): ¬ P :=
    λ pfP: P, notQ (PimpQ pfP)
```

# 16.8 Bi-Implication (Iff)

A proposition of the form P ⟷ Q is read as P (is true) if and only if Q (is true). It is defined as (P → Q) ∧ (Q → P). The phrase "if and only if" is often written as "iff" in mathematics. To obtain the ⟷ symbol in Lean, just type "iff". P ⟷ Q is known as a bi-implication or a logical equivalence.

## 16.8.1 Iff Introduction

A proof of a bi-implication requires that you prove both conjuncts: P → Q and Q → P. Given such proofs, you can use the iff introduction inference rule to construct a proof of P ⟷ Q. In Lean, iff.intro is the name of this rule. It takes proofs of P → Q and Q → P and gives you back a proof of P ⟷ Q.

A proof of P ⟷ Q is thus, in essence, a proof of (P → Q) ∧ (Q → P). And this is a pair of proofs, one of P → Q and one of Q → P. Each of these proofs, in turn, being a proof of an implication, is a function, taking either a proof of P and constructing a proof of Q, or taking a proof of Q and constructing one of P.

We we illustrate by assuming that for arbitrary propositions P and Q, we have a proof of P and a proof of Q, and we then apply the iff.intro inference rule to produce a proof of P ⟷ Q. We first write the theorem as an ordinary function of the type we seek to prove: given propositions P and Q,

```
def biImpl (P Q: Prop) (PimpQ: P → Q) (QimpP: Q → P): P ⟷ Q :=
  iff.intro PimpQ QimpP
```

Now we write it as an equivalent theorem …

```
theorem biImpl': forall P Q: Prop, (P → Q) → (Q → P) → (P ⟷ Q) :=
  λ (P Q: Prop) (PimpQ: P → Q) (QimpP: Q → P),
    iff.intro PimpQ QimpP
```

Here's a slightly more interesting application of the idea: we show that for arbitrary propositions, P and Q, P ∧ Q ⟷ Q ∧ P. Remember, whenever you want to prove any bi-implication, the strategy is to prove the implication in each direction, at which you you can then appeal to the iff intro inference rule to complete the proof.

```
theorem PandQiffQandP: forall P Q: Prop, P ∧ Q ⟷ Q ∧ P :=
  λ (P Q: Prop),
    iff.intro
      (λ pf: P ∧ Q, and.intro (and.elim_right pf) (and.elim_left pf))(λ pf: Q ∧ P, and.intro (and.
↪elim_right pf) (and.elim_left pf))
```

Exercise: Write this theorem as an ordinary function, called PandQiffQandP'.

## 16.9 Proof Engineering

There are two main use cases for Lean and for other tools like it. First, it can be used for research in pure mathematics. Second, it can be used to verify properties of software. The latter is the use case that most interests computer scientists and software engineers.

To use Lean for verification, one first write code to be verified, then one writes propositions about that code, and finally one proves them. The result is code that is almost beyond any doubt guaranteed to have the property or properties so proved.

The problem is that such proofs can be complex and hard to just write out as if you were just writing ordinary code. Lean provides numerous mechanisms to ease the task of obtaining proofs. Here we briefly review a few of them.

First, the "sorry" keyword tells Lean to accept a theorem, value, or proof, by assumption, i.e., without proof, or "as an axiom."

```
theorem oeqz: 1 = 0 := sorry
```

As you can see here, undisciplined use of sorry can be danger. It's easy to introduce a new "fact" that leads to a logical inconsistency, i.e., the possibility of producing a proof of false. Taking 1=0 as an axiom is an example. From it you can prove false, at which point you've ruined your logic.

On the other hand, using sorry can be helpful. In particular, it allow you to do what you can think of as top-down structured proof development. You can use it to "stub out" parts of proofs to make larger proofs "work", and then go back and replace the sorrys with real proofs. When all sorrys are eliminated, you then have a verified proof.

Using _ (underscore) in place of sorry asks Lean to try to fill in a proof for you. In some cases it can do so automatically, which is nice, but in any case, if you hover the mouse over the "hole", Lean will tell you what type of proof is needed and what you have in the current context that might be useful in constructive a proof. Hover your mouse over the underscore here. Then replace it with "and.intro _ _" and hover your mouse over those underscores. You will see how this mechanism can help you to develop a proof "top down."

```
theorem test' (p q : Prop) (hp : p) (hq : q) : p   q :=
    _
```

This mechanism also works for ordinary programming by the way. Suppose we want to develop a function that takes a nat/string pair and returns it in the reverse order, as a string/nat pair. You can write the program with a hole for the entire body, then you can "refine" the hole incrementally until you have a correct working program. The type of each hole pretty much tells you what to do at each step. Give it a try.

```
def swap(aPair: nat × string): (string × nat) :=
    sorry //_
```

When the code is complete, this test will pass!

```
theorem swapTest1: swap (5, "hi") = ("hi", 5) := rfl
```

FYI, type "times" to get the × symbol. If S and T are types, S × T is the type of S-T pairs. A value of this type is written as an ordered pair, (s, t), where s: S, and t: T.

## 16.10 Proof Tactics

THIS BRIEF INTRODUCTION TO TACTIC-BASED PROOFS IS COMPLETELY OPTIONAL. SKIP IT AT NO COST. READ IT IF YOU'RE INTERESTED. THIS MATERIAL WILL NOT BE ON THE TEST

IN ANY FORM.

Lean also supports what are called proof tactics. A tactic is a program that turns one context-goal structure (called a sequent) into another. The context/assumptions you can use appear before the turnstile. The remaining "goal" to be proved is after it=. Your job is to apply a sequence of tactics to eliminate (satisfy) the goal/goals. Hover your mouse over the red line at the end and study the sequent, then uncomment each commented tactic in turn, seeing how it changes the sequent. To begin with, you have a context in which p and q are assumed to be arbitrary propositions and hp and hq are assumed to be proofs of p and q, resp., and the goal is p q p. Applying the and.intro rule decomposes the original goal into two smaller goals: provide a proof of p, and provide a proof of q p. The exact hp says "take hp as a complete proof of p." You can follow the rest yourself.

```lean
theorem test'' (p q : Prop) (hp : p) (hq : q) : p q p :=
begin
--apply and.intro,
--exact hp,
--apply and.intro,
--exact hq,
--exact hp
end
```

## 16.11 MOVED STUFF

## 16.12 Propositions in the Higher Order Logic of Lean

KS: This is where it the course is realized.

Lean and related proof assistants unify mathematical logic and computation, enabling us once again to mix code and logic, but where the logic is now higher-order and constructive. So propositions are objects and so are proofs. As such, propositions must have types. Let's write a few simple propositions and check to see what their types are.

Zero equals zero is a proposition.

```lean
#check 0=0

#check Prop
```

Every natural numbers is non-negative.

```lean
#check  n: nat, n >= 0
```

Get the forall symbol by typing "forall"

Every natural number has a successor.

```lean
#check  n: , ( m: , (m = n + 1))

#check  n: , n = 0
```

Get the exists symbol by typing "exists".

Propositions are values, too! .. code-block:: lean

    def aProp :=  n: ,  m: , m = n + 1

    #check aProp

In each case, we see that the type of any proposition is Prop. What's the type of Prop?

```
#check Prop
```

Ok, the type of Prop is also Type. So what we have here is a type hierarchy in which the familiar types, such as nat, have the type, Type, but where there's also a type, called Prop, that is also of type, Type, and it, in turn, is the type of all propositions.

So let's start again with x := 1. The value of x is 1. The type of the value, 1, is nat. The type of nat is Type. From there the type of each type is just the next bigger "Type n."" We've also seen that a proposition, such as 0=0, is of type, Prop, which in turn has the type, Type. But what about proofs?

## 16.13 PROOF AND TRUTH

What does it mean for a proposition to be true in Lean? It means exactly that there is a proof, which is to say that it means that there is some value of that type. A proposition that is false is a good proposition, and a good type, but it is a type that has no proofs, no values! It is an "empty," or "uninhabited" type. The type, 1=0, has no values (no proofs). There is no way to produce a value of this type.

So what about proofs? They crazy idea that Lean and similar systems are built on is that propositions can themselves be viewed as types, and proofs as values of these types! In this analogy, a proof is a value of a type, namely of the proposition that it proves, viewed as a type. So just as 1 is a value of type nat, and nat in turn is a value of type, Type, so a proof of 0=0 is a value of type 0=0! The proposition is the type. The proof, if there is one, is a value of such a type, and its type is Prop. To see this more clearly, we need to build some proofs/values.

Here (following this comment) is a new definition, of the variable, zeqz. But whereas before we defined x to be of the type, nat, with value 1, now we define zeqz to be of the type, 0=0, with a value given by that strange terms, "rfl."

We're using the proposition, 0=0, as a type! To this variable we then assign a value, which we will understand to be a proof. Proof values are built by what we can view as inference rules. The inference rule, rfl, builds a proof that anything is equal to itself, in this case that 0=0. -/ def zeqz: 0 = 0 := rfl

The rfl widget, whatever it is, works for any type, not just nat.

```
def heqh: "hello" = "hello" := rfl
```

The proof is produced the rfl inference rule. It is a "proof constructor" (that is what an inference rule is, after all), is polymorphic, uses type inference, takes a single argument, a, and yields a proof of a = a.

The value in this case is 0 and the type is nat. What the rule says more formally is that, without any premises you can always conclude that for any type, A, and for any value, a, of that type, there is a proof of a = a.

For example, if you need a proof of 0=0, you use this rule to build it. The rule infers the type to be nat and the value, a, to be 0. The result is a proof of $0 = 0$. The value of zeqz in this case is thus a *proof*, of its type, i.e., of the proposition, $0 = 0$. Check the type of zeqz. Its type is the proposition that

```
#check zeqz
```

It helps to draw a picture. Draw a picture that includes "nodes" for all of the values we've used or defined so far, with arrows depicting the "hasType" relation. There are nodes for 1, x, zeqz, nat, Prop, Type, Type 1, Type 2, etc. KS: DRAW THE GRAPHIC

When we're building values that are proofs of propositions, we generally use the keyword, "theorem", instead of "def". They mean exactly the same thing to Lean, but they communicate different intentions to human

readers. We add a tick mark to the name of the theorem here only to avoid giving multiple definitions of the same name, which is an error in Lean.

```
theorem zeqz': 0 = 0 := rfl
```

We could even have defined x := 1 as a theorem.

```
theorem x'': nat := 1
```

While this means exactly the same thing as our original definition of x, it gives us an entirely new view: a value is a proof of its type. 1 is thus a proof of the type nat. Our ability to provide any value for a type gives us a proof of that type. The type checker in Lean ensures that we never assign a value to a variable that is not of its type. Thus it ensures that we never accept a proof that is not a valid proof of its type/proposition.

## 16.14 Propositions

Lean and related proof assistants unify mathematical logic and computation, enabling us once again to mix code and logic, but where the logic is now higher-order and constructive. So propositions are objects and so are proofs. As such, propositions must have types. Let's write a few simple propositions and check to see what their types are.

Zero equals zero is a proposition.

```
#check 0=0

#check Prop
```

Every natural numbers is non-negative.

```
#check  n: nat, n >= 0
```

Get the forall symbol by typing "forall"

Every natural number has a successor.

```
#check  n: , ( m: , (m = n + 1))

#check  n: , n = 0
```

Get the exists symbol by typing "exists".

Propositions are values, too!

```
def aProp :=  n: ,  m: , m = n + 1

#check aProp
```

In each case, we see that the type of any proposition is Prop. What's the type of Prop?

```
#check Prop
```

### 16.14.1 The Type Hierarchy (Universes) of Lean

Ok, the type of Prop is also Type. So what we have here is a type hierarchy in which the familiar types, such as nat, have the type, Type, but where there's also a type, called Prop, that is also of type, Type, and

it, in turn, is the type of all propositions.

So let's start again with x := 1. The value of x is 1. The type of the value, 1, is nat. The type of nat is Type. From there the type of each type is just the next bigger "Type n."" We've also seen that a proposition, such as 0=0, is of type, Prop, which in turn has the type, Type. But what about proofs?

### 16.14.2 Proof is Truth

What does it mean for a proposition to be true in Lean? It means exactly that there is a proof, which is to say that it means that there is some value of that type. A proposition that is false is a good proposition, and a good type, but it is a type that has no proofs, no values! It is an "empty," or "uninhabited" type. The type, 1=0, has no values (no proofs). There is no way to produce a value of this type.

## 16.15 Using Lean

### 16.15.1 Binding Values to Variables

Here's a typical definition: in this case, of a variable, x, bound to the value, 1, of type, nat.

```
def x: nat := 1
def z:    := 1
def y := 1
```

### 16.15.2 Checking Types

You can check the type of a term by using the #check command. Then hover your mouse over the #check in VSCode to see the result.

```
#check 1
#check x
```

Lean tells you that the type of x is nat. It uses the standard mathematical script N ( ) for nat. You can use it too by typing "nat" rather than just "nat" for the type.

```
def x':    := 1
```

You can evaluate an expression in Lean using the #eval command. (There are other ways to do this, as well, which we'll see later.) You hover your mouse over the command to see the result.

```
#eval x
```

In Lean, definitions start with the keyword, def, followed by the name of a variable, here x; a colon; then the declared type of the variable, here nat; then :=; and finally an expression of the right type, here simply the literal expression, 1, of type . Lean type-checks the assignment and gives and error if the term on the right doesn't have the same type declared or inferror for the variable on the left.

### 16.15.3 Types Are Values Too

In Lean, every term has a type. A type is a term, too, so it, too, has a type. We've seen that the type of x is nat. What is the type of nat?

```
#check nat
```

What is the type of Type?

```
#check Type
```

What is the type of Type 1?

```
#check Type 1
```

You can guess where it goes from here!

## 16.16 Propositional Logic and ND Proofs in Lean

Up until now, when we want to write a theorem about arbitrary propositions, we've used the connective to declare them as propositions. So we've written " P Q R: Prop, ..." for example.

We can avoid having to do this over an over again by declaring P, Q, and R, or any other objects as "variables" in the "environment." We can then use them in follow-on definitions without having to introduce them each time by using a . Lean figures out that that's what we mean, and does it for us. Here are a few examples.

```
variables P Q R: Prop
```

If we wanted to, we could also assume that we have proofs of one or more of these propositions by declaring variables to be of these types. Here's one example (which we won't use futher in this code).

```
variable pf_P: P
```

Now we can write somewhat more interesting propositions, and prove them. Here's an example in which we prove that if P Q is true then we P is true. The proof is by the provisioning of a function that given a proof of P Q returns a proof of P by applying and.elim_left to its argument.

Now, rather than writing propositons that use explicitly to define variables, we can just use P, Q, and R as if they were so defined. So, instead of this ...

```
theorem t6:  P Q: Prop, P  Q → P :=
  λ (P Q: Prop) (pfPandQ: P  Q), and.elim_left pfPandQ
```

... we can write this. Note the absence of the P Q R: Prop. It's not needed as these variables are already defined.

```
theorem t6': P  Q → P :=
  λ pfPandQ: P  Q, and.elim_left pfPandQ
```

When you check the type of t6, you can see that Lean inserted the P Q: Prop for us. Both t6 and t6' have exactly the same type.

```
#check t6
#check t6'
```

Similarly we can prove that P  Q → Q  P without having to explicitly declare P and Q to be arbitrary objects of type Prop.

```
theorem t7: P ∧ Q → Q ∧ P :=
  λ PandQ: P ∧ Q,
    and.intro
        (and.elim_right PandQ)
        (and.elim_left PandQ)
```

And another example of arrow elimination.

```
theorem ae: (P → Q) -> P -> Q :=
    λ pf_impl: (P → Q), (λ pf_P: P, pf_impl pf_P)
```

Enclosing the declaration of variables and of definitions that use those variables within a "section <name> .... .... end <name>" pair limits the scope of the variables to that section. It's a very useful device, but we don't need to use it here, and so we'll just leave it at that for now. Here's a tiny example.

```
section nest
variable v: nat
theorem veqv: v = v := rfl
end nest
```

The variable, v, is not defined outside of the section. You can #check it to see. On the other hand, veqv, a definition, is defined. If you check its type, you'll see that the variable, v, is now introduced using a " v: nat, …""

```
#check veqv
```

## 16.17 Conclusion

As mathematicians and computer scientists, we're often the goal of proving some putative (unproven) theorem (aka conjecture). A key question in such a case is what proof strategy to use to produce a proof. The rules of natural deduction can help. First, look at the form of the proposition. Then ask what inference rule could be used to deduce it. That rule tells you what you need to already have proved to apply the rule. In some cases, no further proofs are needed, in which case you can just apply the inference rule directly. Otherwise you construct proofs of the premises of the rule, and then apply it to contruct the desired proof.

If you want to prove an equality, simplify and then apply the axiom that says that identical terms can be considered equal without any other proofs at all. The rfl inference rule is what you need in this case.

If you want to prove a conjunction, you need to have (or construct) proofs of the conjuncts then use the "and introduction" inference rule.

If you have a proof of a conjunction and you need a proof of one of its conjuncts, use one of the and elimination rules.

If you want to prove an implication, P → Q, you need to write (and have the type checker agree that you've written) a function of type P → Q. Such a function promises to return a value of type Q (a proof, when Q is in Prop), whenever you give it a value of type (a proof of) P.

If you have such a function/implication and you need a proof of Q, first get yourself a proof of P, then apply the P → Q "function" to it to produce a proof of Q. This is the way to do → elimination.

If you need a proof of P ∨ Q, you first need a proof of P or a proof of Q, then you use the or introduction inference rule.

If from a proof of P ∨ Q you need to deduce a proof of R, then you need in addition to the proof of P ∨ Q both a proof of P → R and a proof of Q → R. Then you can use the or elimination inference rule to prove

R (i.e., to construct and return a proof of R).

To obtain a proof of P ↔ Q, you need both a proof of P → Q and a proof of Q → P. You can then use the iff introduction rule to get the proof you want. Think of P ↔ Q as equivalent to P → Q ∧ Q → P. You need proofs of both of the conjuncts to construct a proof of the conjunction. The iff elimination rules are basically the same as the and elimination rules: from a proof of P ↔ Q, you can get a proof of either P → Q or Q → P as you might need.

To prove ¬P, realize that it means P → false, so just implement a function that when given a proof of P, it constructs and returns a proof of false. Of couse it will never be able to do that because if ¬P is true, then no proof of P can ever be given as an argument.

In the other direction, if you have a proof of ¬P and you need a proof of false (so as to prove some other arbitrary proposition), just apply the proof of ¬P to an proof of P to get the false input you need to pass to the false elmination inference rule (which proves any proposition whatsoever).

If you need a proof of true, it's always available, in Lean as true.intro. We already explained how to get a proof of false. There are other ways. For example, if you have a proof of P and a proof of ¬ P (which is just a function), apply the function to the proof and you're done.

From the form of a proposition to be proved, identify the inference rule (or a theorem) otherwise already proved that can be applied to prove your proposition. Now look at what premises/arguments/proofs are needed to apply it. Either find such proofs, or construct them by recursive application of the same ideas, and finally apply the rule to these arguments to complete the proof.

## 16.18 Exercises

(1) Write an implementation of comp (call it comp'), using a lambda expression rather than the usual function definition notation. This problem gives practice writing function bodies as lambda expressions.

```
def comp': ℕ → ℕ :=
  λ n: nat, sqr(inc(n))
```

(2) Write three test cases for comp' and generate proofs using the strategy of "simplication and the reflexive property of equality."

```
theorem test1: comp' 0 = 1 := rfl
theorem test2: comp' 1 = 4 := rfl
theorem test3: comp' 2 = 9 := rfl
```

(3) Implement the Fibonacci function, fib, using the usual recursive definition. Test it for n = 0, n = 1, and n = 10, by writing and proving theorems about what it computes (or should compute) in these cases. Hint: Write your cases in the definition of the function for 0, 1, and n+2 (covering the cases from 2 up). Here you get practice writing recursive functions in Lean. The syntax is similar to that of the Haskell language. -/

```
def fib: ℕ → ℕ
| 0 := 0
| 1 := 1
| (n+2) := fib n + fib (n+1)

theorem fibtest1: fib 0 = 0 := rfl
theorem fibtest2: fib 1 = 1 := rfl
theorem fibtest10: fib 10 = 55 := rfl
```

(4) Uncomment then complete this proof of the proposition, "Hello World" = "Hello" + " World" (which we write using the string.append function). Put your anwer in place of the <answer> string. This example

introduces Lean's string type, which you might want to use at some point. It also gives you an example showing that rfl works for diverse types. It's polymorphic, as we said.

```
theorem hw : "Hello World" = string.append "Hello" " World" :=
    rfl
```

(5) Prove P ∧ Q ∧ R → R . Hint: ∧ is right-associative. In other words, P ∧ Q ∧ R means P ∧ (Q ∧ R). A proof of this proposition will thus have a pair inside a pair. Note that we're using the fact that P, Q, and R have already been introduced as arbitrary propositions. See the "variables" declaration above.

```
theorem xyz: P ∧ (Q ∧ R) → R :=
  λ pf: P ∧ Q ∧ R, and.elim_right (and.elim_right pf)
```

If we didn't already have the variables declared, we would introduce local declarations using ∀. Note that the names of the variables used in the definition of the function need to be of the same type, but do not have to have the same names as those variables.

```
theorem xyz': ∀ X Y Z: Prop, X ∧ Y ∧ Z → Z :=
  λ P Q R pf, and.elim_right (and.elim_right pf)
```

(6) Prove P → (Q → (P ∧ Q)). You can read this as saying that if you have a proof of P, then if you (also) have a proof of Q ,then you can produce a proof of P and Q. Hint: → is right associative, so P → Q → (P ∧ Q) means P → (Q → (P ∧ Q)). A proof will be a function that takes a proof of P and returns … you guessed it, a function that takes a proof of Q and that returns a proof of P ∧ Q. The body of the outer lambda will thus use a lambda.

```
theorem PimpQimpPandQ: P → (Q → (P ∧ Q)) :=
    λ (pfP: P) (pfQ: Q), and.intro pfP pfQ
```

```
def PimpQimpPandQ'(pfP: P) (pfQ: Q): P ∧ Q :=
  and.intro pfP pfQ
```

Extra Credit: Prove (P ∨ Q) → (P → R) → (Q → R) -> R. This looks scary, but think about it in the context of material you've already learned about. It say that if you have a proof of (P ∨ Q), then if you also have a proof of (P → R), then if you also have a proof of (Q → R), then you can derivea proof of R. The "or elimination" rule looked like this. You'll want to use that rule as part of your answer. However, the form of the proposition to be proved here is an implication, so a proof will have to be in the form of be a function. It will take the disjunction as an argument. Then just apply the or elimination rule in Lean, which is written as or.elim.

```
theorem orelim: (P ∨ Q) → (P → R) → (Q → R) -> R :=
    λ pq pr qr, or.elim pq pr qr
```

# PROOFS OF EQUALITIES

An expression, v1=v2, is a proposition that asserts the equality of the terms v1 and v2. The terms are considered equal if and only if one can produce a proof of v1=v2. There is an inference rule defined in Lean that can produce such a proof whenever v1 and v2 are exactly the same terms, such as in 0=0. This rule can also produce a proof whenever v1 and v2 reduce (evaluate) to identical terms. So we can also produce a proof of 0+0=0, for example, because 0+0 reduces to 0, and then you have identical terms on each side of the =. This notion of equality is called "definitional equality". As you'd expect, it's a binary, reflexive, symmetric, and transitive relation on terms. It is also polymorphic, and so can be used for any two terms of the same type, A, no matter what A is. The Lean inference rule that produces proofs of definitional equality is just rfl.

Here (following) are several terms that are definitionally equal even though they're not identical. rfl is happy to build proofs for them. The second example illustrates that terms that look pretty different can still be definitionally equal. On the left we have a nat/string pair. The .1 after the pair is the operator that extracts the first element of the pair, here term 1-1. This term then reduces to 0. The terms on either side of the = thus reduce to the same term, 0, which allows rfl to complete its work and return a value that is accepted as being of the right type, i.e., as a proof of equality.

theorem t0 : 1 - 1 = 5 - 5 := rfl theorem t1 : (1-1, "fidge").1 = 0 := rfl

What you are seeing here is a strategy of proving propositions that assert equalities in two steps: first simplify (evaluate) the expressions on either side of the =, and then certify a proof of equality if and only if the resulting terms are identical. Whether you are using a proof assistant tool such as Lean or just doing paper-and-pencil mathematics, this is a fundamental strategy for proving propositions of a certain kind, namely propositions that assert equalities.

## 17.1 Proofs Based on Properties of Equality

There are analogous strategies for dealing with other situations involving equalities. For example, if we have proofs of a = b and b = c and we need a proof of a = c, then we would use an inference rule that depends not on the reflexive property of equality but on that fact that it is transitive: if a = b and b = c then a = c. Similarly, there is a rule that reflects the symmetric property of equality: given a proof of a = b, it builds and returns a proof of b = a. We do not get into the details at this time.

### 17.1.1 By The Reflexive Property of Equality

**theorem byRefl:** $\alpha$ [Type, a][$\alpha$, a = a]

$= \lambda (\alpha \text{ Type}) (a: \alpha), \text{eq.refl a}$

An English-language proof of p = p would read, "… p = p is true by the reflexive property of equality." Remember: "rfl" is just a shorthand for "eq.refl a", where "a" is the value on the left of the equals sign.

## 17.1.2 By the Symmetric Property of Equality

**theorem bySymm:** $\alpha$ [Type, p q: $\alpha$, p = q → q = p] /- eq.symm applied to a proof of p=q constructs a proof of q=p -/ := $\lambda$ ($\alpha$: Type) (p q: $\alpha$) (pfpq: p = q),

eq.symm pfpq

#check 1 = 2

## 17.1.3 By the Transitive Property of Equality

The transitive property of equality provides a corresponding inference rule, p=q, q=r  p=r. In Lean this rule is called eq.trans. We give an example its use in proving a theorem that simply asserts that equality has the transitiveity property.

**theorem byTrans:**

$\alpha$: **Type,**

**p q r:** $\alpha$, p = q → q = r → p = r :=

$\lambda$ $\alpha$ p q r pfpq pfqr, eq.trans pfpq pfqr

In ordinary English we'd say "if p=q and q=r then p=r. We could write the theorem using and; we'd just have to access the proofs within the pair constituting the proof of the conjunction."

**theorem byTrans':**

$\alpha$: **Type,**

**p q r:** $\alpha$, p = q  q = r → p = r

/- Applying eq.trans to a proof of p=q and a proof of p=q and a proof of q=r yields a proof of p=r. Here we have to extract the proofs of p=q and q=r from the proof of (p=q  q=r). -/ := $\lambda$ $\alpha$ p q r conj,

**eq.trans** (and.elim_left conj) (and.elim_right conj)

## 17.1.4 Optional: Substitutability of Equals

**theorem substutabilityOfEquals:**

$\alpha$: **Type,** **P:** $\alpha$ → **Prop,** **a1 a2:** $\alpha$, a1 = a2 → P a1 → P a2 := /- If a1 equals a2, then if the predicate (a proposition with a parameter), P, is true of a1, then P is also true of a2. -/

$\lambda$ $\alpha$ P a1 a2 eql, eq.subst eql

/- An exercise: Example of an Exam Question -/ theorem eq_quiz: ($\alpha$ : Type) (p q r s: $\alpha$),

**p = q → (p = q → r = s) → q = r → p = s :=**

$\lambda$ $\alpha$ **p q r s pfpq pfpqrs pfqr,**

**eq.trans**

**(eq.trans** pfpq pfqr)

(pfpqrs pfpq)

#check eq_quiz

# PROOFS OF INEQUALITY

How do you prove zero does not equal one? What principle actually make this proposition true? The principle in play here is the *injectivity of constructors of inductively defined types.* The *semantics* of an inductive type definition are such that different constructors always produce different values. The inductive data types for our simplified Boolean expression language provided two constructors, for example: *bTrue* and *bFalse.* It follows from the injectivity of constructors that these two values cannot be equal. To see why zero does not equal one, we need to understand how the natural numbers themselves can be defined inductively, leading us to the notion of Peano Arithmetic. It will then be clear, given the injectivity of constructors, that zero cannot be equal to one, or to any other natural number.

## 18.1 Peano's Princples

## 18.2 Why Zero Isn't One

## 18.3 Proofs of Inequality in Lean

## 18.4 More to come

# PROOFS OF EXISTENCE

Predicate logic allows for existentially quantified propositions. For a simple example, one might claim that there exists a natural number, $n$, such that $n = 3 + 1$. That is $\exists n, n = 3 + 1$. In the constructive logic of Lean, and in type theory more generally, a proof of such a proposition is a basically pair. The first element of such a pair is a value that satisfies the given condition. We call a value of this kind a *witness*. The second element of the pair is a *proof* that that particular value satisifies the condition.

There is a witness in this case. It's the number, *4*. And there is a proof that $4 = 3 + 1$, namely $rfl$. The proof of the proposition, $\exists n, n = 3 + 1$ is thus, in essence, the ordered pair, $(4, rfl)$. In this chapter we explain these ideas in more detail and show how to construct such proofs in Lean. We end with a discussion of differences in existence proofs in constructive and classical logic.

More to come.

# PROOFS OF UNIVERSALITY

Predicate logic allows for universally quantified propositions.

Notes not yet prepared. More to come.

# TERMINATION

## 21.1 Structural recursion

## 21.2 Well-founded recursion

## 21.3 Fuel

Notes not yet prepared.

# INDICES AND TABLES

- genindex
- modindex
- search